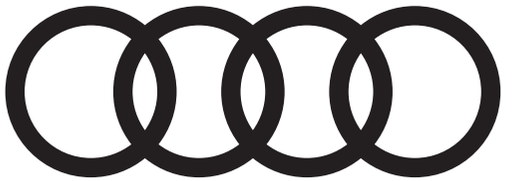
Owner's Manual
English 07.2024
89A012720AM

89A012720AM

www.audi.com

Q4 e-tron Owner's Manual



Owner's Manual

Q4 e-tron

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2024 AUDI AG

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. Audi recommends that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

Audi wishes you safe and enjoyable motoring with your vehicle.

WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 71*.

89A012720AM

Notes on this Owner's Manual . . . 5

Quick reference . . . 6
Getting started . . . 6
Online information . . . 6
FAQs . . . 7
Front cabin . . . 9
Overview of warning and indicator lamps . 10

Displays and controls . . . 15
Instrument cluster . . . 15
Overview of instrument cluster . . . 15
How to use the multi-function steering wheel . . . 15
Selecting the display . . . 16
Power meter . . . 17
Mileage recorder . . . 17
Outside temperature display . . . 17
Vehicle functions . . . 17

Touch display . . . 19
General instructions for using the touch display . . . 19
Multi Media Interface . . . 21

Head-up display . . . 27
Description . . . 27

Speech dialogue system . . . 28
General information . . . 28
Description . . . 28
External voice control function . . . 29

Global functions . . . 30
Other function selector buttons . . . 30

Setting off . . . 31
Personal settings . . . 31
Users . . . 31

Doors and windows . . . 33
Central locking system . . . 33
Keys . . . 38
Boot lid . . . 40
Child lock . . . 44
Electric windows . . . 44
Panoramic sunroof . . . 45
Garage door opener . . . 46

Lights and vision . . . 50
Exterior lights . . . 50
Interior lights . . . 54
Clear vision . . . 55
Windscreen wipers . . . 56

Sitting correctly and safely . . . 60
Ensuring the correct seating position . . . 60
Front seats . . . 60
Steering wheel . . . 62
Head restraints . . . 63
Seat belts . . . 64
Memory function . . . 67
Airbag system . . . 68
Child restraint systems . . . 71

Storage and convenience . . . 78
Power sources . . . 78
Cup holders . . . 78
Storage compartments . . . 79
Luggage compartment . . . 79
Roof carrier . . . 83

Heating and cooling . . . 85
Air conditioner . . . 85
Steering wheel heating . . . 89
Auxiliary air conditioner . . . 89
Fluids in the air conditioner . . . 91

Driving . . . 92
Starting the vehicle . . . 92
Driving the vehicle . . . 93
Power unit . . . 95
Brakes . . . 97
Electromechanical parking brake . . . 99
Special driving situations . . . 101

Handling dynamics . . . 102
Audi drive select . . . 102
Suspension . . . 102
Steering . . . 103
Four-wheel drive (quattro) . . . 104
Electronic stabilisation control . . . 104

High-voltage system . . . 107
General information . . . 107
Charging the high-voltage battery . . . 110

Charging settings 117
Charging equipment 120

Towing a trailer 134
Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan 134
Swivelling towing bracket 136
Towing bracket with square tube 140

Assistance systems 142
Driver assist systems 142
General information 142
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings 143
Driver assist menu 145
Parking aid menu 146

Driver information 147
Speed warning 147
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 147
Traffic light information 149
Fatigue warning 151
Distraction warning 152

Driver assistance 154
Speed regulation systems 154
Efficiency assist 157
Adaptive cruise assist 158
Distance warning 170
Lane departure warning 171
Audi pre sense 174
Side assist 177
Exit warning 179
Emergency assist 180

Parking and manoeuvring 182
Introduction 182
Rear parking aid 182
Parking aid plus 184
Reversing camera/surround view cameras . 186
Rear cross-traffic assist 190
Assisted parking 191
Park assist plus 193

Infotainment 197
Telephone 197
Introduction 197
Setting up 197
Using the Audi phone box 199
Using the telephone 201
Settings 204
Messages 205
Troubleshooting 206

Audi connect 208
General information 208
Audi connect infotainment 209
Establishing a Wi-Fi connection 209
Using the Wi-Fi hotspot 209
Audi connect infotainment services 210
Functions on demand 211
Audi connect apps 211
Audi connect vehicle control services 212
Settings 212
Troubleshooting 213

Emergency call 215
Overview 215
Emergency call 215
Online roadside assistance call 217
Information on data processing 217
Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit 218

Navigation 219
Calling up the navigation menu 219
myAudi navigation 219
Entering a destination 220
Stopping route guidance 224
Map 224
Predictive route guidance 226
Alternative routes 227
Further functions 227
Satellite map 228
Electric range 228
Map update 229
Traffic information 229
Hazard alerts 231
Settings 231

Radio 234
General information 234
Radio functions 235
Online radio 237
Options and settings 239
Troubleshooting 240

89A012720AM

Media 241
General information 241
Bluetooth audio player 241
Multimedia connections 242
Playing media 243
Options and settings 246
Supported media and file formats 247
Troubleshooting 248

In-car experience 250
Themes 250

Smartphone interface 251
Setting up 251
Troubleshooting 252

Further settings 253
System settings 253
Software update 254
Connected devices 255
Legal information 256

Service and care 258
Checking and topping up fluids . 258
Front compartment 258
Cooling system 261
Brake fluid 263
Electrical system 264
Battery 265
Windscreen washer system 268
Service interval display 268

Wheels 270
Tyres and rims 270
Tyre pressure loss indicator 275

Care of vehicle and cleaning 277
General information 277
Washing the vehicle 277
Information on cleaning and care 278
Taking the vehicle out of service 282

Self-help 283
Mobility 283
General information 283
Equipment 283
Tyre repair kit 284
Changing a wheel 286
Jump-starting 288
Towing away 290

Fuses and bulbs 293
Fuses 293
Bulbs 295

Customer information 296
Data protection 296
Information on data protection 296
Image recording 296
Data recorders 296
Information transmitted 297

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 300
Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle 300
Accessories and replacement parts 301

Technical data 303
Identification data 303
Vehicle data 303

Other information 306
Trademarks and licences 306
Driving school mode 306
Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH 306
Information on waste disposal 306
Radio equipment 307
Additional customer information 310

Index 312

This Owner's Manual contains important information, safety precautions and tips for operating your vehicle.

MAKE SURE TO READ THE OWNER'S MANUAL AND KEEP IT IN A SAFE PLACE

Read this Owner's Manual carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that this Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Updates to the Owner's Manual: Please bear in mind that Audi[1)] works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. Depending on the vehicle and the market, such alterations may be possible via software updates. It is therefore also possible that the Owner's Manual will be updated. This is done by publishing supplements which may be made available to you as printed documents and in digital form. You can find out whether a digital or printed supplement applies to your vehicle by referring to the corresponding information in the supplement.

Vehicle-specific features: This Owner's Manual describes standard, country-specific and optional equipment which is available for the entire model series. It is also possible that some equipment and functions will only be introduced at a later date or are only available in specific markets. The Manual therefore also describes items which are not fitted in your specific vehicle. Illustrations are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations and descriptions.

Indications of applicability: Some sections do not apply to all vehicles. In such cases, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. "Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function". In addition to this, optional and/or vehicle-specific equipment and functions may be marked with an asterisk "* " or indicated by a corresponding remark (e.g. "depending on vehicle equipment").

Symbols and descriptive conventions in the Owner's Manual:

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ Section continued on next page

⇨ *page 68* Cross-reference to other descriptions or subjects

⇨ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING"

References to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

1) "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the importer for your country and the joint ventures.

89A012720AM

Getting started

Online information

myAudi

You can access your Owner's Manual in digital form on your mobile device via myAudi. You can also find information on Audi Service, the maintenance of your vehicle or the Digital Service Schedule.

Important: You must have a myAudi account. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

- ▸ Go online to my.audi.com, or
- ▸ Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

Note

Audi online manuals and the Digital Service Schedule are not available in all countries or on all mobile devices.

Online Owner's Manual

Applies to: vehicles with online Owner's Manual

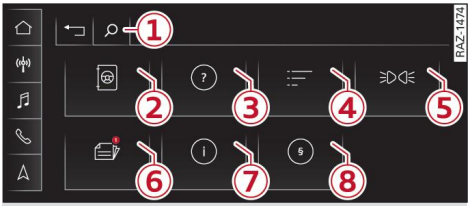


Fig. 1 Centre display: Online Owner's Manual

With the online Owner's Manual, you can access your Owner's Manual directly on the infotainment system. Whenever you open the Owner's Manual, it is opened in the language selected as the system language on the MMI.

Calling up the online Owner's Manual

Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **HELP** > **Owner's Manual**.

Functions and operation

① **Text search**

The text search function can be used to search the entire contents of the Owner's Manual for specific search terms. The search result display is organised into different topics.

– Press the 🔍 button and enter the desired search term.

② **Chapters**

You can display the contents of the Owner's Manual according to different topics.

③ **FAQs**

The FAQs provide answers to frequently asked questions to help you get started with your vehicle.

④ **Index**

You can use the index to find specific terms and access the related information quickly.

⑤ **Warning and indicator lamps**

Provides an overview of available warning lamps and their meaning.

– Press on the corresponding warning lamp to display its meaning.

⑥ **Supplements**

If there are any amendments to the Owner's Manual, these can be found in the supplements. The **Supplements** menu appears only if a supplement is available. A notification icon indicates the number of supplements available. This disappears as soon as the **Supplements** menu is called up.

⑦ **Info**

Provides an overview of general information on the Owner's Manual. You can also change the language in which the contents of the online Owner's Manual are displayed. The language is reset when you close the online Owner's Manual.

Change language

– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **HELP** > **Owner's Manual** > **Info** > **Change language**.

⑧ **Legal information**

Provides an overview of all the legal information on the online Owner's Manual. ▶

WARNING

You should only use the online Owner's Manual when the vehicle is safely parked; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident.

Note

– The online Owner's Manual is not available in all countries.
– The information is correct at the time of publication. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

FAQs

Before you set off

– How do I adjust the seats? ⇨ *page 60*
– How do I adjust the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 62*
– How does the selector lever work? ⇨ *page 94*
– What is a transmission position and what is a driving program? ⇨ *page 94*
– How does the electromechanical parking brake work? ⇨ *page 99*
– How can I keep the car free to roll? ⇨ *page 99*
– How do I adjust the exterior mirrors? ⇨ *page 55*
– How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? ⇨ *page 56*
– Where is the windscreen washer container? ⇨ *page 261*
– How can I store the tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 276*
– How do I drive with a trailer or caravan? ⇨ *page 134*

e-tron

– How do I start my vehicle? ⇨ *page 92*
– What do I need to consider when setting off in an electric vehicle? ⇨ *page 93*
– How can I use recuperation to recover energy while driving? ⇨ *page 95*
– What can I use the paddle levers for in an electric vehicle? ⇨ *page 95*
– How do I find the next charging station? ⇨ *page 220*
– What options do I have for charging my vehicle? ⇨ *page 110*
– How do I charge my vehicle? ⇨ *page 113*
– How can I control the charging cycle so that the battery is only charged to a particular level? ⇨ *page 117*
– What do I need to know if I want to charge the vehicle with a mains voltage under 200 V? ⇨ *page 123*
– How do I finish the charging cycle? ⇨ *page 114*
– What do the colours of the LEDs on the charging unit mean? ⇨ *page 115*
– How can I set specific charging times for my vehicle? ⇨ *page 118, Timers*

Breakdowns and emergencies

– Where can I find the warning triangle? ⇨ *page 283*
– Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇨ *page 283*
– Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 272*
– How do I jump-start my vehicle? ⇨ *page 288*
– Which airbags are installed in my vehicle? ⇨ *page 68*
– Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? ⇨ *page 290*
– How can I release the charging connector manually? ⇨ *page 116*

Useful functions

– How can I automatically control the distance to the vehicle in front? ⇨ *page 158, Adaptive cruise assist*
– How can I have the adaptive cruise assist system react automatically to speed limits and the road ahead? ⇨ *page 165*
– How can I stay in my lane more easily? ⇨ *page 163*
– How can I receive a warning if I don't stay in my lane? ⇨ *page 171*
– How can I use the parking aid? ⇨ *page 182*
– How can I safely navigate blind exits and intersections where it is difficult to see? ⇨ *page 188*
– How can I operate the main beam headlights automatically? ⇨ *page 51*
– How can I drive off more easily? ⇨ *page 99*

▶

89A012720AM

– How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇨ *page 177, Side assist*
– How can I open the boot lid with a foot gesture? ⇨ *page 42*
– How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇨ *page 102, Audi drive select*
– How can I benefit from using the swerve assist and turn assist features? ⇨ *page 176* or ⇨ *page 176*

Displays and controls

– How do I switch on the touch display? ⇨ *page 21*
– How do I use the touch display? ⇨ *page 19*
– How do I adjust the volume? ⇨ *page 30*
– How do I navigate through the menus? ⇨ *page 22*
– How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇨ *page 25*
– How can I control functions such as the navigation system by voice? ⇨ *page 28*
– Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 15* or ⇨ *page 30*
– How can I have information displayed on the windscreen? ⇨ *page 27, Head-up display*
– How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇨ *page 54*

Infotainment

– How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree telephone system? ⇨ *page 197*
– How can I switch between connected devices? ⇨ *page 255*
– How can I call up information online? ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*
– How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇨ *page 209*
– What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇨ *page 220*
– How do I operate the map functions? ⇨ *page 224*
– How can I display traffic information? ⇨ *page 229*
– How can I listen to the radio? ⇨ *page 234*
– How can I play media? ⇨ *page 243*
– How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇨ *page 241, Bluetooth audio player*

Tips and tricks

– How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇨ *page 35*
– How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇨ *page 45, Convenience open/close function*
– How can I adjust the opening position of the boot lid? ⇨ *page 42*
– How can I deactivate the front passenger's airbag? ⇨ *page 71*
– How do I secure a child restraint system? ⇨ *page 71*
– What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇨ *page 277*
– How can I drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way? ⇨ *page 96*
– How can I see when the next service is due? ⇨ *page 268*

Front cabin

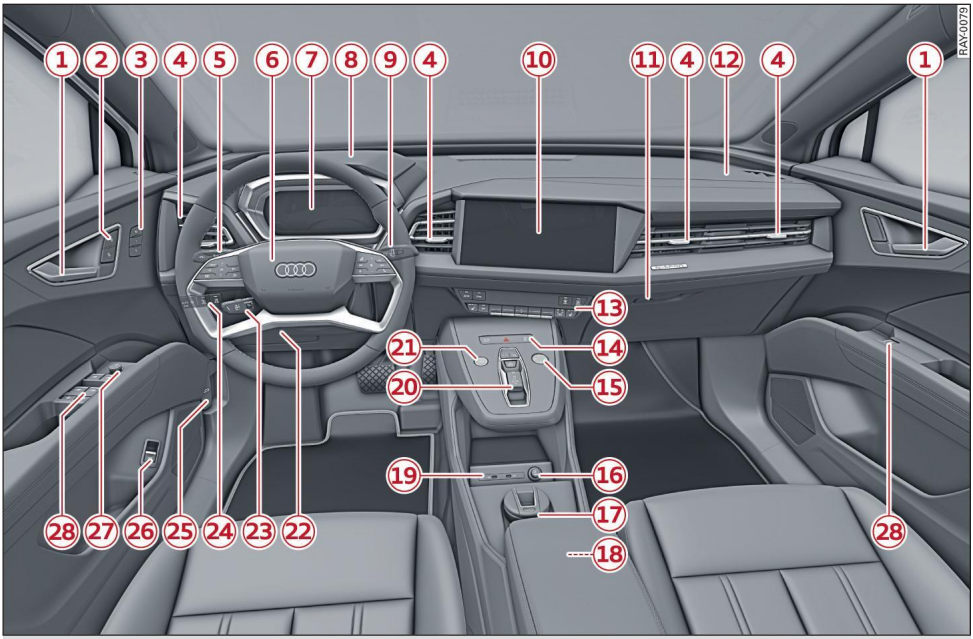


Fig. 2 Front cabin

① Interior door handle
② Central locking switch 35
③ Buttons for memory function 67
④ Vent
⑤ Control lever for:
– Turn signals and main beam headlights 51
– Main beam assist 51
– Lane departure warning 171
– Lane guidance 163
⑥ Multi-function steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 68
– Controls 15, 30
– Paddle levers 95
⑦ Instrument cluster 15
⑧ Head-up display 27
⑨ Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer 56
⑩ Centre display 21
⑪ Lockable glove box with:
– Key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag 71
⑫ Front passenger's airbag 68
⑬ Air conditioner 85
⑭ Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:
– Drive select 102
– Hazard warning lights 53
– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 105
⑮ MMI control dial 21, 30
⑯ Electrical socket 78
⑰ Depending on equipment fitted:
– Starting the vehicle after a malfunction 93
– Cup holder 78
⑱ Centre armrest with storage compartment
⑲ Depending on equipment fitted:
– USB ports with charging function . 242
– Audi phone box . . . . . 199 ▶

(20) Depending on equipment fitted:
- – Driver assist systems 145
- – Parking systems 182
- – Switch for electromechanical parking brake 99
- – Selector lever 94

(21) START STOP button 92

(22) Steering wheel adjustment 63

(23) Control lever for:
- – Speed regulation systems 154
- – Adaptive cruise assist 158

(24) Switches for:
- – Lights 50
- – All-weather lights 50
- – Rear fog light 50

(25) Bonnet lock release 259

(26) Button for boot lid 40

(27) Adjuster for exterior mirrors 55

(28) Switches for:
- – Window regulators 44
- – Child lock 44

Note

- – Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
- – The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on ⇨ *page 9*. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

Description

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults. Certain warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go back out when the power unit is switched on or once the vehicle is moving.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the second display tab (driver messages) ⇨ *page 15*.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

⚠ Central warning/indicator lamps

If the warning lamp ⚠ or indicator lamp ⚠ lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Overview

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:

Red warning lamps	
	Central warning lamp ⇨ *page 10*, instrument cluster ⇨ *page 15*
	Seat belt ⇨ *page 67*
A/C	Air conditioner ⇨ *page 89*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 96*, ⇨ *page 290*, ⇨ *page 291*, high-voltage system ⇨ *page 109*, cooling system ⇨ *page 261*, ⇨ *page 262*, electrical system ⇨ *page 264*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 96*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 99*

	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 100*, brake system ⇨ *page 263*
	Steering ⇨ *page 103*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 103*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*, take over braking prompt ⇨ *page 165*, safe start monitor ⇨ *page 169*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*, ⇨ *page 165*
	Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 160*, ⇨ *page 165*
	Assisted lane change (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 160*, ⇨ *page 164*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 170*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 172*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 172*
	Pre sense ⇨ *page 174*, ⇨ *page 175*, ⇨ *page 175*
	Swerve support ⇨ *page 176*
	Software update ⇨ *page 255*
	Bonnet ⇨ *page 260*

	Cooling system ⇨ *page 261*, ⇨ *page 261*, ⇨ *page 262*, ⇨ *page 290*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 264*

Yellow indicator lamps

	Central indicator lamp ⇨ *page 10*
	Central locking system ⇨ *page 35*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 39*
	Bulb monitor ⇨ *page 53*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 53*
	Headlight range control ⇨ *page 53*
	Light sensor/rain sensor ⇨ *page 53*, ⇨ *page 59*
	Windscreen wipers ⇨ *page 59*
	Safety systems ⇨ *page 69*
	Air conditioner ⇨ *page 89*
	Motor start system ⇨ *page 93*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 93*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 96*, charging system ⇨ *page 116*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 96*
	Vehicle sound ⇨ *page 96*

	Brake pads ⇨ *page 98*
	Brake servo ⇨ *page 98*, electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 100*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 98*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 103*
	Steering ⇨ *page 103*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 103*
	Four-wheel drive ⇨ *page 104*
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 105*
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 105*
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 106*
	Anti-lock brake system ⇨ *page 106*
	High-voltage battery range ⇨ *page 116*
	Towing bracket ⇨ *page 136*, ⇨ *page 136*, ⇨ *page 139*
	Fatigue warning ⇨ *page 152*
	Distraction warning ⇨ *page 153*
	Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 160*, ⇨ *page 165*, take over steering prompt (lane departure warning) ⇨ *page 173*
	Assisted lane change (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 164*

	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 170*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 171*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 173*
	Pre sense ⇨ *page 174*, ⇨ *page 177*, ⇨ *page 177*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 179*
	Exit warning system ⇨ *page 180*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 181*
	Parking aids ⇨ *page 183*, ⇨ *page 185*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 190*
	Park assist plus ⇨ *page 196*
	Emergency call function ⇨ *page 216*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 264*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 268*
	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 275*
	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 275*

Further indicator lamps

	Dipped headlights ⇨ *page 50*
	Side lights ⇨ *page 50*, ⇨ *page 50*
	Turn signals ⇨ *page 51*, ⇨ *page 53*

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 51*, ⇨ *page 53*
	Rear seat belt ⇨ *page 67*
	Hold assist ⇨ *page 100*
	Trailer turn signals ⇨ *page 135*
	Cruise control ⇨ *page 155*
	Speed limiter ⇨ *page 155*
	Predictive speed limiter ⇨ *page 155*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*, ⇨ *page 158*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*, adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*
	Assisted lane change (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 160*

	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 172*
	Park assist plus ⇨ *page 194*, ⇨ *page 194*
	Main beam headlights ⇨ *page 51*, ⇨ *page 52*
	Main beam assist ⇨ *page 52*
	Rear seat alert with warning tone ⇨ *page 35*
	Rear seat alert ⇨ *page 35*
	Child lock ⇨ *page 44*
	Main beam assist ⇨ *page 52*, ⇨ *page 53*
	Rear seat belt ⇨ *page 67*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 93*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 100*
	Brakes ⇨ *page 100*
	Speed warning function ⇨ *page 147*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 149*
	Fatigue warning ⇨ *page 152*
	Distraction warning ⇨ *page 153*
	Cruise control ⇨ *page 155*, ⇨ *page 156*
	Speed limiter ⇨ *page 155*, ⇨ *page 156*

	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 157*, adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 169*, ⇨ *page 170*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 160*, ⇨ *page 163*
	Assisted lane change (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 160*
	Assisted lane change (adaptive cruise assist) ⇨ *page 160*, ⇨ *page 164*, ⇨ *page 164*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 167*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 171*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 172*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 172*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 173*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 179*
	Exit warning system ⇨ *page 180*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 181*
	Parking aids ⇨ *page 183*, ⇨ *page 185*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 190*
	Park assist plus ⇨ *page 196*
	Park assist plus ⇨ *page 196*

Instrument cluster

Overview of instrument cluster

Fig. 3 Overview of instrument cluster

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following content may be displayed in the instrument cluster:

① Left dial
- – Power meter 17
- – Charge level of high-voltage battery

② Tab area 15

③ Central area 15

④ Status line (one or two lines)

⑤ Right dial
- – Convenience display

⑥ Additional display on right with speedometer

⑦ Additional display on left with:
- – Transmission position 94
- – Audi drive select 102

WARNING

The display may be deactivated if a serious system fault occurs. The warning lamp may also light up. Stop the vehicle safely. Seek professional assistance.

Note

– You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. ⇨ *page 253*.

– Certain contents of the instrument cluster can also be projected onto the head-up display* ⇨ *page 27*.

How to use the multi-function steering wheel

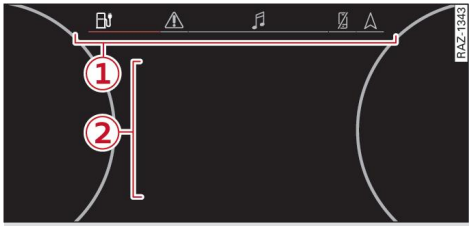


Fig. 4 View of driver information system

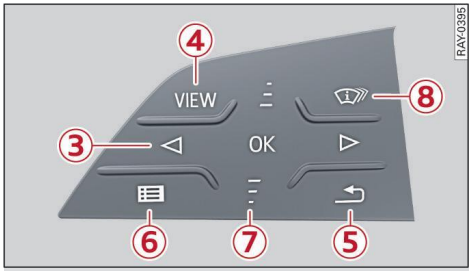


Fig. 5 Left side of multi-function steering wheel

The information in the instrument cluster is organised in different tabs ①. The details from ▶

each tab are displayed in the central area (2). You can operate the instrument cluster using the controls on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel.

Depending on the steering wheel version, it may be possible to perform specific actions, such as selecting a tab or a function, by swiping across the steering wheel buttons.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Selecting a tab

- Press the ◁ or ▷ button (3) repeatedly until the desired tab is selected, or
- To use gesture control, swipe to the right/left in area (3) until the desired tab is selected.

Returning to the previous function level

- Press the ⮌ button (5).

Opening/closing a menu

- Press the ☰ button (6).

Selecting and confirming a function

Important: A menu or a list must be displayed.

- To select a function, press the ⫧ or ⫨ button (7) repeatedly until the desired function is selected, or
- To use gesture control, swipe up/down in area (7) until the desired function is selected.
- To confirm a selection, press OK.

Switching the head-up display on/off

- Press and hold the 🚗 button (8) until the head-up display is switched on/off.

Changing views

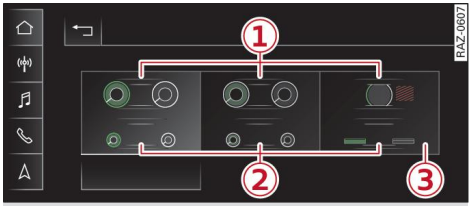
- Press the VIEW button (4) ⇨ *page 16*.

Overview of tabs

The following tabs are available depending on the vehicle equipment:

Symbol	Description
⛽	Vehicle functions
⚠	Driver messages (only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed)
♫	Multimedia
📞	Telephone
▲	Navigation

Selecting the display



Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Fig. 6 Centre display: Selecting display

Depending on the equipment version, you can change views or layouts in the Audi virtual cockpit.

Changing views

- Press the VIEW button to switch between the standard view (1) and the extended view (2).

Selecting a layout

Different layouts may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Audi virtual cockpit**.
- Press on the desired layout to select it (3).

Setting additional display

The additional displays that can be selected vary depending on the equipment installed on your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Audi virtual cockpit** > **Configure**.
- Select the desired additional display. ▶

Reducing the view

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reduced display**.
- On some equipment versions, you can press the VIEW button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Power meter

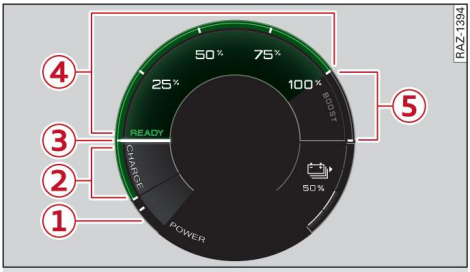


Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: Power meter

The power meter ① ⇨ *page 15* indicates the drive capacity currently being utilised. The needle of the power meter indicates the current capacity utilisation.

A colour border indicates how heavily the drive system can currently be utilised. The colour may vary depending on which layout is selected and how much electric power is currently available.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the power meter may indicate the following driving states:

① Drive system switched off
② Vehicle recuperating electrical energy
③ Drive system switched on
④ Vehicle moving; drive system utilisation displayed in percent
⑤ Vehicle moving and increased power output available

Mileage recorder

The trip recorder and odometer are displayed in the status line ④ ⇨ *page 15*.

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys. The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

Resetting trip recorder

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reset kilometres**.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line ④ ⇨ *page 15*.

At temperatures below +5 °C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!

Vehicle functions

Overview

The on-board computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Further vehicle functions are available depending on the equipment on your vehicle.

- Press the ☰ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 17*
– Charging
– Reduced display ⇨ *page 17*
– Reset trip recorder ⇨ *page 17*

On-board computer

Switching between displays

- Press button ⇤ or ⇥ ⑦ ⇨ *page 15, Fig. 5* repeatedly until the desired display appears, or
- To use gesture control, swipe up/down in area ⑦ until the desired display appears. ▶

Resetting values to zero

Important: The **consumption**, **short-term memory** or **long-term memory** display must be selected.

- ▸ To reset the figures in the selected memory to zero, press OK on the multi-function steering wheel for one second, or
- ▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reset kilometres**.

Displays in on-board computer

The following displays can be called up, depending on the equipment on your vehicle:

– Time and date ⇨ *page 253*
– Average fuel consumption ⇨ *page 18*
– Short-term memory summary
– Long-term memory summary
– Driver assistance ⇨ *page 160*
– Traffic sign recognition and traffic light information
– Fatigue warning ⇨ *page 151*
– Distraction warning ⇨ *page 152*

Short-term/long-term memory

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Average consumption

The current power consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average power consumption from the short-term memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving energy (e.g. using recuperation).

Note

The date, the time and the time/date display format can be changed ⇨ *page 253*.

Touch display

General instructions for using the touch display

General information

Applies to: touch display

The centre display is touch-sensitive. It is operated in much the same way as a smartphone.

Note

Certain gestures are not available in all menus.

Pressing

Applies to: touch display

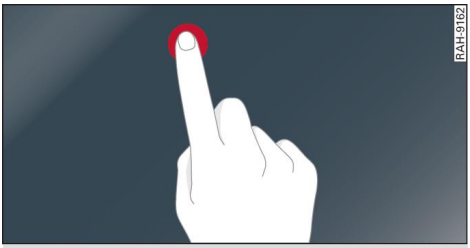


Fig. 8 Touch display: Pressing

Selecting a function or button

▸ Press the desired function or button.

Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch display

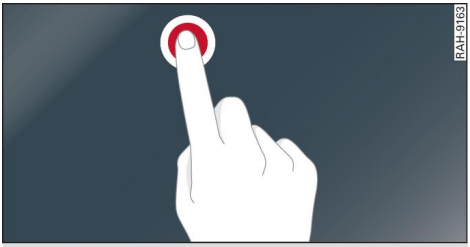


Fig. 9 Touch display: Pressing and holding

Calling up options

For certain items, you can call up further options which are not immediately visible.

▸ Press and hold an item until the corresponding options are displayed.

Pressing and dragging

Applies to: touch display

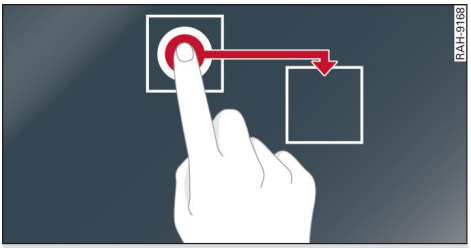


Fig. 10 Touch display: Pressing and dragging

Moving an object

You can re-arrange certain objects as desired.

▸ Press and hold an object and drag it with your finger to the desired position.

Creating/deleting a folder

With some equipment versions you can create a folder with multiple elements.

▸ To create a folder, press and hold an object and drag it onto another object. The folder and a categorical folder name are created ⇨*page 23*.
▸ To delete a folder, move all objects out of the folder.

Pinching/spreading your fingers

Applies to: touch display

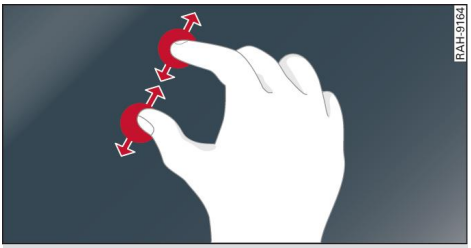


Fig. 11 Touch display: Pinching/spreading your fingers

Zooming in/out on an object

▸ Spread two fingers to make an object larger. ▶

▸ Pinch two fingers together to make an object smaller.

Rotating

Applies to: touch display

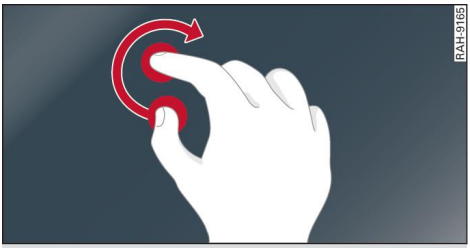


Fig. 12 Touch display: Rotating

Rotating the view or angle

▸ Rotate the object with two fingers.

Swiping

Applies to: touch display

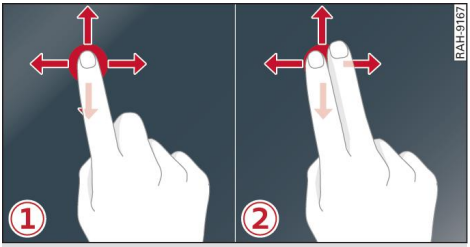


Fig. 13 Touch display: ① Swiping with one finger, ② swiping with two fingers

Scrolling or paging in menus/lists

▸ To scroll in menus/lists, swipe up/down with one finger.
▸ To page through menus/lists, swipe up/down with two fingers.

Angling 3D views

▸ Swipe up/down with two fingers.

Swiping away from/towards the edge

Applies to: touch display

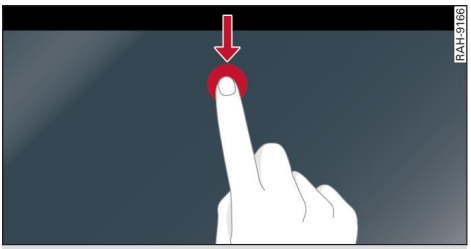


Fig. 14 Touch display: Swiping away from the edge

Opening hidden menus

The ▭ symbol indicates a hidden menu.

▸ Swipe your finger from the top/bottom edge of the screen towards the centre, or
▸ Press the ▭ button.

Closing a hidden menu

▸ Press within the menu and swipe it towards the top/bottom edge of the screen.

Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

Example of a path description

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Using a path description

▸ The first part of the path indicates which display is to be used (in this example it is the MMI display).
▸ Press ⌂ to call up the home screen.
▸ If the **SETTINGS** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
▸ Press the **SETTINGS** button.
▸ If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
▸ Press the **General** button.
▸ If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.
▸ Press the **Date & time** button. ▶

Note

Menus or symbols in the path description that are shown in brackets, e.g. (**General**) or (⚙), are optional menu items which do not need to be selected in all systems.

Settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI**.

Available settings:

– **Brightness**
– **Touchscreen feedback**

Multi Media Interface

Notes on traffic safety

Audi recommends that certain infotainment functions should not be used unless the vehicle is stationary, e.g. entering a destination or connecting a mobile device. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

WARNING

– Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!
– The same applies when operating your mobile device via the MMI. Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident!

Note

– Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion.
– Certain lists, such as the radio station list, are arranged alphabetically. Lists with messages or current notifications are arranged by date.

Switching on/off

Switching the MMI system on/off

▸ To switch the MMI system off, press and hold ⏻ on the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 22* until all the infotainment functions are switched off.
▸ To switch the MMI system on, press ⏻ on the MMI control dial.

Restarting the MMI system

▸ Press and hold ⏻ on the MMI control dial for at least ten seconds.

Switching the centre display on/off

▸ To switch the centre display off, press in the notification centre ⇨ *page 24*.
▸ To switch the centre display on, touch the display.

Introduction

You can display and operate different infotainment and vehicle functions using the touch display of the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

With some equipment versions, in addition to using the pre-installed apps, you can also download additional apps ⇨ *page 211*.

Setup wizard

After switching on the system for the first time, you can use the wizard to set up your vehicle, e.g. to select the desired system language and connect a telephone.

▸ Follow the directions given on the centre display.
▸ Applies to MMI: To access the setup wizard at a later time, select the following on the home screen: **HELP** > **Setup wizard**.

Usage tips

If necessary, you can have usage tips shown as an introduction to the different MMI functions.

▸ Applies to MMI: To call up usage tips, select the following on the home screen: **HELP** > **Usage tips** > **Basic information** or **Expert information**.

▶

▸ Follow the directions given on the display.

Online Owner's Manual

Applies to: vehicles with online Owner's Manual

With the online Owner's Manual, you can access your Owner's Manual directly on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 6*.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **HELP** > **Owner's Manual**.

Menus and symbols

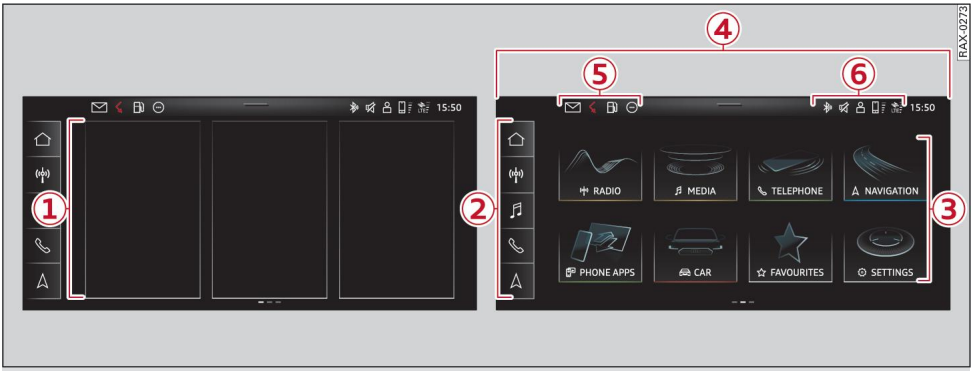


Fig. 15 MMI: Centre display

	Name	Description
①	**Overview page**	Selected information boxes and quick access buttons for certain functions are shown here ⇨ *page 23*
②	**Quick access bar**	Returning to the home screen or overview page, quickly accessing a menu ⇨ *page 23*
③	**Display area**	Selecting a menu, changing settings, displaying content ⇨ *page 23*
④ – ⑥	**Status bar**	Operating functions and adjusting quick settings ⇨ *page 24*, displaying current notifications ⑤ ⇨ *page 24*, status display ⑥ ⇨ *page 24*, time

Description of global symbols

The symbols below allow you to control standard functions. These symbols may appear in all menus in the appropriate context.

Symbol	Description
	Go back one level
	Close menu
	Search for content
	Call up explanatory information for a menu

Symbol	Description
	Call up settings for the selected menu
	Call up sub-menu
	Adjust settings
	Assign favourite/favourite assigned
	Switch functions on/off
	Switch functions on/off
	Switch functions on/off

Symbol	Description
•••	Call up additional functions
>	Call up additional information on the selected menu

Overview page

The overview page is the first menu page on the MMI. Information on certain vehicle functions, such as media, is shown in information boxes. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, when you log in with your myAudi ID, the overview page may contain personalised information, such as apps used recently. The MMI automatically determines the personalised information that is displayed and its layout.

Configuring the overview page

- ▸ Press and hold an information box on the overview page.
- ▸ To change the position of the information box, keep holding it and drag it to the desired position. With some equipment versions the layout of the overview page can be changed as well.
- ▸ To change the information box, press and select the desired information box.
- ▸ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Calling up the global search function

With some equipment versions you can search for a particular term using the global search function.

- ▸ Call up the overview page and swipe your finger to the right.

Quick access bar

You can use the quick access bar to return to the home screen and switch easily between four menus which can be configured as desired.

Returning to the home screen or quickly accessing a menu

- ▸ Press ⌂ or one of the four buttons.

Configuring the quick access bar

- ▸ Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen or on the quick access bar.
- ▸ To move a button to the quick access bar, drag it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- ▸ To re-arrange the buttons, drag them within the quick access bar to the desired position.
- ▸ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Note

It is not possible to move ⌂ to another position.

Display area

The buttons (including folders) in the display area of the home screen can be re-arranged as desired.

Configuring the display area

- ▸ Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen.
- ▸ To re-arrange the buttons, drag them to the desired position.
- ▸ To rename a folder, press on the folder name and enter a name of your choice.
- ▸ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Switching between menu pages

If a menu contains more than one page, is shown in the display area. The white bars indicate the position of the current menu page.

- ▸ To switch between menu pages, swipe to the right/left with one finger.

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with favourites

You can create favourites for quick access e.g. to radio stations, frequently used contacts or vehicle settings. In the **FAVOURITES** menu, the stored favourites are sorted by topic in information boxes.

Adding a favourite

The ☆ button indicates that e.g. a selected radio station can be added to the favourites. In certain contexts it is also possible to add elements without the ☆ button to the favourites, e.g. entries in a list.

- ▸ Press ☆, or ▶

- Press and hold an item in a list.
- Press **Store as favourite**. The selected element will be added as a favourite.

Using a favourite

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **FAVOURITES**. The stored favourites will be shown.
- Select the desired favourite to call it up.

Stored favourites can only be deleted or re-arranged in the corresponding menu (e.g. **RADIO**).

Re-arranging information boxes

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **FAVOURITES**.
- Press and hold the desired information box.
- Drag the information box to the desired position.
- Press **Done** to confirm the position.

Status display

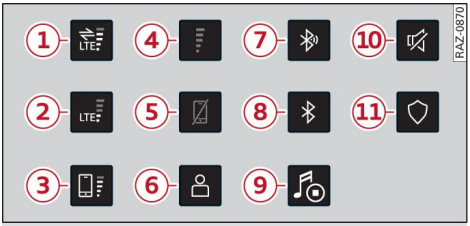


Fig. 16 Centre display: Frequent symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you at a glance whether e.g. a mobile phone is connected or a data connection is available. The most frequent symbols are listed in the table.

	Description
①	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. Data transfer is in progress.
②	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. No data transfer is in progress.
③	A mobile phone is connected. The bars indicate the strength of the mobile reception.
④	No data connection is available.
⑤	A problem occurred when connecting the mobile phone to the MMI.
⑥	A user is selected. If a question mark appears in the symbol, the guest user is active.
⑦	A Bluetooth device is connected.
⑧	Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected.
⑨	Audio playback has been interrupted.
⑩	The audio source is muted.
⑪	A privacy setting is activated. The additional symbol indicates which privacy setting is currently activated ⇨ *page 297*.

Notification centre

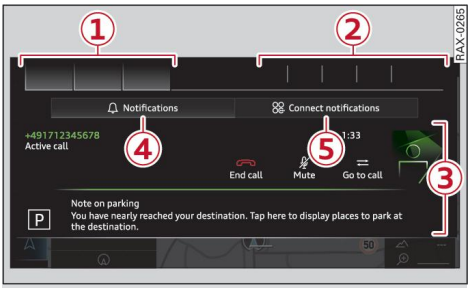


Fig. 17 Centre display: Notification centre

Notifications from the Audi system and from Audi connect apps can be shown on the centre display. They will disappear after a certain time, and the corresponding symbol will appear in the status bar ⑤ ⇨ *page 22, Fig. 15*. You can view these notifications ③ ⇨ *Fig. 17* and adjust the quick settings ② or operate functions ① in the notification centre.

On some equipment versions the system notifications and connect app notifications are grouped together and shown in separate lists ④ / ⑤.

How to use the notification centre

- To open the notification centre, drag the status bar downwards, or
- Press the button in the status bar.
- To call up a notification list, tap on the desired button ④ or ⑤ in the notification centre.
- To activate/deactivate functions, press the corresponding symbol ①. ▶

- ▸ To adjust the quick settings, press the corresponding symbol ②.
- ▸ Press on a notification to receive further information about it.
- ▸ To delete a notification, drag it to the right edge of the screen.
- ▸ If there are more than four notifications in the notification centre, the older ones will be hidden. To display older notifications, swipe upwards with one finger.

Setting which information is displayed

You can determine whether or not certain system notifications are displayed.

- ▸ To set which information is displayed, press the button, or
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Notifications**.
- ▸ Select and confirm which notifications you would like to have displayed.

Operating functions

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the following functions are available in area ①:

Symbol	Description
	Press: Switch the centre display on/off
	Press and hold: Switch screen cleaning mode on/off
	Call up garage door opener
	Press: Show settings for head-up display
	Press and hold: Switch head-up display on/off

Adjusting quick settings

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the following quick settings may be available in area ②:

Symbol	Description
	Adjust the sound settings
	Manage connected devices
	Manage users
	Set which information is displayed in the notification centre
12:30 24.10.2023	Set the date and time

Text entry

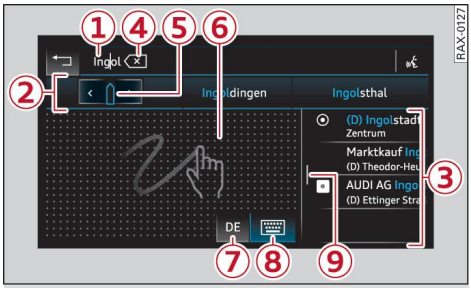


Fig. 18 Centre display: Entering text

Overview

You can enter letters, numbers and characters in the entry fields of different menus, e.g. to find an address in the navigation system*.

The centre display will show the text as it is entered ①. In certain contexts, the system will suggest words based on the characters you have entered ② and display them in a results list ③.

Calling up the text entry function

- ▸ Press within the entry field ①.

Changing the input language

Important: More than one input language must be set in the MMI ⇨ *page 26*.

- ▸ To switch between the set input languages, press the button ⑦.

Changing the input method

- ▸ To switch between handwriting recognition and the on-screen keyboard, press the button ⑧.

Entering text

- ▸ Applies to on-screen keyboard: You can enter text by pressing the keys on the keyboard. In ▶

certain contexts, you can also swipe your finger over the letters[1].

- Applies to handwriting recognition: Text can be entered by simply writing with your finger in the entry area (6). You can write individual characters one over the other or one after the other without having to lift your finger from the screen. When you have finished, the system will interpret what you have written.
- Applies to on-screen keyboard with diacritical marks: To enter diacritical marks (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold the appropriate character and select the desired diacritical mark.
- Applies to handwriting recognition: To enter a space, draw a line from left to right[2] in the entry area (6).
- To select the position where the text is entered, press within the entry field at the desired position. You can adjust the position even more precisely using the slider (5) [1] displayed on the screen.
- To delete a single character, press ⌫ (4), or
- Applies to handwriting recognition: Draw a line from right to left[2] in the entry area (6).
- To delete more than one character, press and hold ⌫ (4).
- To delete all characters up to a certain position, press and hold ⌫ (4) and drag your finger to the desired position[1]. The characters that disappear when you do this will be deleted when you let go.

Using suggested words or selecting entries from the results list

- You can use a suggested word (2) or select an entry from the results list (3) by pressing on it.
- To display more entries in the results list, swipe up/down with one finger.
- To expand the results list, press button (9) or drag it inwards.

Setting the input language/keyboard layout

- On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard** > **Keyboard**.
- To set additional input languages, press the ⊂⊃ button.
- To change the keyboard layout for one of the input languages, press >. Select e.g. QWERTZ or QWERTY.

[1] Depends on equipment and country

[2] If the input language is set to Arabic, make the gestures described in the opposite direction.

Head-up display

Description

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

Fig. 19 Windscreen: Display zones on head-up display

The augmented reality head-up display has a static display zone (1) and an augmented reality display zone (2). Certain information, such as road speed and warning lamps, can be displayed in the static zone. The information in the augmented reality zone relates directly to the current road/traffic situation and can be provided by the navigation system or supporting onboard equipment, for example.

Switching on/off

- To switch the head-up display on/off, press and hold the button in the notification centre on the MMI ⇨ *page 24*, or
- Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel until the head-up display is switched on/off.

It may take several seconds for the information to appear after the head-up display is switched on.

Settings on infotainment system

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Head-up display**.

Available settings:

– **Display rotation**
– **Brightness**
– **Display**: You can switch the head-up display off or specify which display zones are to appear.
– **Display height**: The height of the display can be adjusted. Assume an appropriate seating position ⇨ *page 60* and make adjustments on the image of the head-up display.
– **Display contents**: You can determine which types of information are displayed. Some of the information and warnings cannot be hidden.

CAUTION

Do not place any objects over the opening for the head-up display to avoid scratching the glass cover.

Note

– The display may be harder to see in unfavourable light conditions or if you are wearing polarised sunglasses.
– To be able to see the display as clearly as possible, adjust the position of your seat and the height setting for the head-up display.
– A special windscreen is required for the head-up display.
– Notes on cleaning ⇨ *tab. Cleaning the interior on page 279*.

89A012720AM

Speech dialogue system

General information

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can operate many vehicle functions conveniently by voice from the driver's or front passenger seat.

For best results when using the speech dialogue system

- Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- Close any doors or windows, etc., to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- Keep the vents pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.

WARNING

– Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!

– The speech dialogue system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

Note

No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.

Description

How to operate the speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

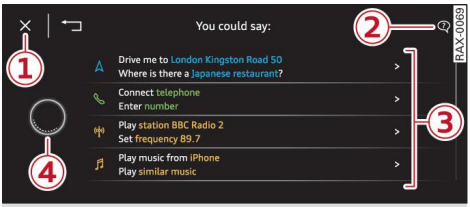


Fig. 20 Centre display: Speech dialogue system

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the speech dialogue system. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

Via the button

- Briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel, or, in certain contexts, press on the centre display.
- Give a spoken command after the tone.
- To switch the speech dialogue system off, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel or say **Cancel**. Alternatively, press ① ⇨ *Fig. 20*.

Via a voice command

- Applies to MMI: To operate the speech dialogue system via a voice command, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > (**Speech dialogue system**) > **Activate speech dialogue system with "Hey Audi"**.
- Say the activation phrase **Hey Audi** followed by the desired command.
- To switch the speech dialogue system off, say **Cancel**, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel or press ① ⇨ *Fig. 20*.

Commands and hints

The speech dialogue system menu shows possible commands or helpful hints for the current dialogue ③.

- For additional assistance for the current dialogue, say **Help** or press ②. ▶

▸ To pause the speech recognition, say **Pause** or press (4). To resume using the speech recognition, press (4) again or briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Command during speech dialogue

When this function is switched on, you can simply say a new command while the system is giving a spoken cue.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > (**Speech dialogue system**) > **Allow command during speech dialogue**.

Online recognition

Applies to: vehicles with online recognition

You can activate online recognition for additional functions and even better results when using the speech recognition. A supported system language must be selected. When the system is connected to the internet, your spoken commands will be evaluated online as well as in the vehicle.

▸ A menu for the online recognition function is displayed when you switch the speech dialogue system on for the first time, or
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialogue system** > **Agreement for SDS online recognition**.
▸ Read and accept the licence conditions.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

External voice control function

Applies to: vehicles with external voice control function

You can use the system in the vehicle to call up and operate the voice control function of a connected mobile phone.

Switching the external voice control function on/off

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 197*. The mobile phone connected must have a voice control function that can be controlled externally. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

▸ To switch the external voice control function on, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
▸ To switch off the external voice control function, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel, or press **Cancel**.

Operating the external voice control function

▸ Give a spoken command after the tone.
▸ To resume using the voice control function after pausing it, briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel or press **Resume**.

Note

Audi only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

Global functions

Other function selector buttons

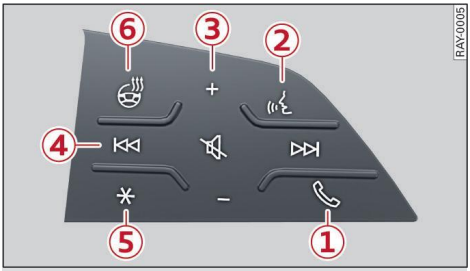


Fig. 21 Right side of multi-function steering wheel

Fig. 22 Centre console: MMI control dial

You can operate the functions described below using the controls on the right side of the multi-function steering wheel. You can also operate certain functions via the MMI control dial.

Depending on the steering wheel version, it may be possible to perform specific actions, such as adjusting the volume or fast forwarding/rewinding a track, by swiping across the steering wheel buttons.

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

- To increase/reduce the volume via the steering wheel, press the +/- button (3) as appropriate or swipe up/down in area (3), or
- To increase/reduce the volume via the MMI control dial ⇨ *Fig. 22*, swipe your finger in a clockwise or anti-clockwise direction.
- To mute the sound, press on the steering wheel or MMI control dial.

Selecting the previous/next track/station

- Press |◁◁ / ▷▷| (4) on the steering wheel or swipe to the left/right in area (4), or
- Press |◁◁ / ▷▷| on the MMI control dial.

Fast forward/rewind

- Press and hold |◁◁ / ▷▷| (4) on the steering wheel or on the MMI control dial until the desired playing position is reached.

Quick access button on steering wheel

Button (5) gives you quick access to various functions, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

You can program the ✻ button with various functions.

- To use the function currently programmed, press the ✻ button.
- To find out which function is currently programmed, press and hold the ✻ button, or
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Steering wheel button**.
- Select and confirm the desired function.

Switching the steering wheel heating on/off

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

button (6); refer to ⇨ *page 89*.

Switching the speech dialogue system on/off

button (2); refer to ⇨ *page 28*.

Operating telephone functions

button (1); refer to ⇨ *page 203*.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Personal settings

Users

General information

Applies to: vehicles with individual user settings

Depending on the equipment and country, your vehicle can manage different users in the MMI system. Each user is assigned their most recently used settings.

Before driving off, you can select a user in the MMI system and load their individual infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI system:

– **myAudi user**: myAudi users can use Audi connect services which require a myAudi account. Certain settings are transferred online to your myAudi account. If you log into your myAudi account in another vehicle, you can load your settings into that vehicle.
– **Local user**: Local users can only store their settings in the current vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. Audi connect services which require a myAudi account are not available.
– **Guest user**: Guest users can store their settings in the vehicle without changing other users' settings. Audi recommends the guest user for temporary use only, as the settings can be overwritten by other users.

WARNING

It is possible that some or all of the infotainment and vehicle settings may not be loaded. As the driver you are always responsible for the infotainment and vehicle settings – risk of accident!

Note

– Certain infotainment and vehicle settings (e.g. mirror settings/last radio station) may be stored, depending on your vehicle's equipment. Further information can be found on the MMI. On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.
– Applies to myAudi users: The stored settings can only be transferred to compatible vehicles. This capability may be restricted in certain countries.
– Applies to myAudi users: The settings can only be transferred and loaded within the area covered by a particular mobile network service provider.
– Applies to myAudi users with PIN protection activated: If a recognised user is displayed on the MMI and you drive off or wait without entering the 4-digit PIN, the guest user will be selected. Some of the settings of the recognised myAudi user will be transferred to the guest user.

User management

Applies to: vehicles with user management

Calling up the user management

Applies to: MMI

▸ On the home screen, press **USERS**.

Selecting a user

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press on the desired user.
▸ If prompted, enter your 4-digit PIN.

Adding a myAudi user

Applies to: MMI and Audi connect

Important: You must have registered at my.audi.com and have created a 4-digit PIN.

▸ Press **Add user**.
▸ Press **Log in now** to log in with your myAudi access data.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Adding a local user

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press **Add user**.
▸ Press **Start setup**.
▸ Press **Local user**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Editing a user

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have selected the user and loaded their settings. ▸

▸ Press on the user.

Depending on the user type, some or all of the following options may be available:

Change the PIN protection / authentication method (depending on the vehicle): When this function is activated, the 4-digit PIN must be entered before the user settings are loaded.

Delete user from vehicle: The user is only deleted from the MMI list in the vehicle.

Deleting a user

Applies to: MMI

▸ On the home screen, select: **USERS** > ✎ > *one or more entries* > **Delete**. The user is only deleted from the list on the MMI. The user permissions for the vehicle (e.g. key user) are not deleted.

Note

– The guest user cannot be renamed.
– When you switch users, the vehicle will load the new user's settings into the vehicle.
– For users with the 🔒 symbol, PIN protection is active. You can edit the user and deactivate the PIN protection.
– Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.

Key user

Applies to: vehicles with key user management

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

The key user automatically has remote access rights, which are required in order to control certain functions (depending on the equipment in your vehicle) such as Audi connect vehicle control services via the myAudi app.

Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

▸ You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com.
▸ Add your vehicle in the myAudi app.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.

Removing the key user

If you remove the key user, all other users and their permissions created by that key user at my.audi.com will be deleted. It will no longer be possible to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

Important: A key user must have been set.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USERS** > ⚙ > **Remove key user**.

Note

– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
– It is not necessary to log in with a myAudi user in the vehicle in order to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.
– Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults.

Doors and windows

Central locking system

General information

WARNING

- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows – this could lead to injuries.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 37, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to child lock: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car when the child lock is activated: the rear doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside – risk of fatal injury!

Description

All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on the setting you have selected on the MMI system ⇨ *page 34*. The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you have the following options for locking/unlocking your vehicle centrally:

- Vehicle key ⇨ *page 39*
- Sensors in the door handles ⇨ *page 39*
- Lock on the driver's door ⇨ *page 36*
- Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 35*

Vehicle key

"Vehicle key" refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 39* and ⇨ *page 92*.

Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle exceeds a speed of about 15 km/h. The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the unlock button in the central locking switch is pressed.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations:

- When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the vehicle key or touching the locking sensor* on one of the doors. ▶

89A012720AM

– Applies to vehicles with convenience key: If the vehicle key that was last in use is left inside the boot, the boot lid will be unlocked again for a brief period to allow you to take the key out ⇨ (!).
– Applies to vehicles with convenience key: If the vehicle key that was last in use is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside ⇨ (!).

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

– If the most recently used vehicle key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle **by sensor** from the outside. Take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.
– If you attempt to lock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key while the front passenger's door or a rear door is open, the vehicle will be locked initially when you close the door if you have accidentally left the key in the vehicle. However, if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the vehicle after it is locked as described above, the vehicle is unlocked again. A warning tone[1)] sounds and the turn signals flash several times to indicate this. However, if you do not open the vehicle and take out the key within a short period of time, the vehicle will be locked automatically (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely). In this case, the vehicle key will be locked inside the passenger compartment.
– If you attempt to lock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key while the boot lid is open, the vehicle will be locked initially when you close the boot lid if you have accidentally left the key in the luggage compartment. However, if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the luggage compartment after it is locked as described above, the luggage compartment will be unlocked again. A warning tone[1)] sounds and the turn signals flash several times to indicate this. However, if you do not open the boot lid and take out the vehicle key within a short period of time, the luggage compartment will be locked automatically (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely). In this case, the vehicle key will be locked inside the luggage compartment.

Note

– Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
– When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

The central locking system can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Central locking**.

Doors to unlock

– If you select **All**, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
– If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key*, only the driver's door will be unlocked when you take hold of the door ▶

1) Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

handle. Gripping any of the other door handles unlocks the whole vehicle.

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the button.

Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows and the panoramic sunroof* can be opened using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 45, Convenience open/close function*. Pressing and holding the button on the vehicle key will always close all the windows and the panoramic sunroof*.

Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Tone when locking[1)]

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

Applies to vehicles without anti-theft alarm system: The acoustic signal is given only when you lock the vehicle twice in quick succession.

Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle via sensor. It is still possible to lock the vehicle via sensor ⇨ *page 39*.

Central locking switch

Fig. 23 Driver's door: Central locking switch

▸ To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the / button ⇨ .

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

– The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
– The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
– In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.
– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off.
– The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Driver's door: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual

A malfunction has occurred in the driver's door. Apply the parking brake to hold the vehicle before getting out. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

/ Please check rear seats!

or

/ Please check rear seats and be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual

At the end of each trip, a driver message will appear on the centre display to remind you that someone may be seated on the rear seats. If you previously opened one of the rear doors, the driver message will also appear in the instrument ▶

[1)] This function is not available in all countries.

cluster. Make sure that you do not leave any children or animals behind when you leave the vehicle.

You can switch the notification sound on/off.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Rear notification sound**.

For vehicles with the safelock mechanism, please observe ⇨ ⚠ *in Anti-theft alarm system on page 37*

Vehicle key detected in vehicle interior

or

Vehicle key detected in boot

This driver message appears if a vehicle key is detected in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and a door or the boot lid is then closed. The vehicle also reacts by flashing the turn signals several times and issuing a warning tone[1)]. Remove the vehicle key without delay. Otherwise, the vehicle will be locked automatically and the vehicle key will be locked in the vehicle (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely).

Locking/unlocking the doors manually

If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, the doors will have to be locked/unlocked separately.

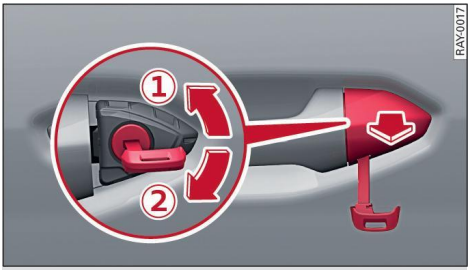


Fig. 24 Driver's door lock

Fig. 25 Door: Locking the door manually

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Switch on the ignition or press the button on the vehicle key after opening the driver's door manually. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is not activated when the doors are locked manually.

Locking/unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key

- ▸ Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 38*.
- ▸ Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and lever off the cap ⇨ *Fig. 24*.
- ▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the emergency key to the unlock position ① ⇨ *Fig. 24*. The handle of the emergency key must face the rear door.
- ▸ To open the driver's door, pull the door handle.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, apply the parking brake, close the door and turn the emergency key to the lock position ② once ⇨ ⚠. The handle of the emergency key must face the rear door.

Locking front passenger's door/rear doors with the emergency key

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 38*.
- ▸ If necessary, pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *Fig. 25*.
- ▸ Insert the emergency key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the right (if the door is on the right side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side). ▶

1) Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

▸ If necessary, insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the front passenger's door/rear doors have been closed, they can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed, it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

▸ To deactivate the alarm press the button on the vehicle key or switch on the ignition.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the bonnet, the boot lid or one of the doors is forced open, or if a door is opened after it is unlocked via the lock cylinder.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection.

Safelock[1)]

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇨ . The message **Be aware of door safelock** or **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock* mechanism will be activated.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

Deactivating the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock[1)]

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism*:

▸ Press the button on the vehicle key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
▸ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
▸ Turn the emergency key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
▸ Applies to vehicles with MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Interior monitor**.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism* will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

When the function has been deactivated, the LED on the door sill will flash briefly and then remain off for approx. half a minute.

WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the ▶

[1)] This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

CAUTION

If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against break-ins and theft.

Note

– The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the panoramic sunroof* are closed.
– The alarm is triggered if you pull one of the interior door handles, even if you have switched off the safelock mechanism*.

Keys

Set of keys

Fig. 26 Keys supplied with the vehicle

Two keys are supplied with each new vehicle.

① Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car.

② Emergency key and release button for emergency key

An emergency key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and pull out the emergency key.

You can use the emergency key to ...

– activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag* ⇨ *page 71*.
– Applies to vehicles with lockable glove box: lock/unlock the glove box.
– lock/unlock the doors manually ⇨ *page 36*.

Replacing a key

If you should lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you.

It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.

CAUTION

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.

For the sake of the environment

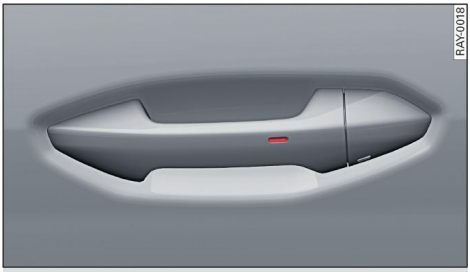
Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 306, Information on waste disposal*.

Note

– The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
– Applies to MMI: You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle. On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Car information**.

– A key fob may be attached to the set of keys when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The key fob contains information on the vehicle keys. The key fob can be used to order new vehicle keys. Please store the key fob in a safe place and give it to the new owner if you sell the car.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle



Applies to: vehicles with convenience key
Fig. 27 Door handle: Sensor* for locking

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there are various ways to lock/unlock your vehicle. You can select which doors are unlocked in the settings on the MMI system ⇨ *page 34*.

Unlocking/locking via buttons on vehicle key

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *page 38, Fig. 26*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.

Unlocking/locking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- To unlock the vehicle, take hold of the door handle.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *Fig. 27*. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.

Note

– Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.
– The vehicle can only be locked when the parking brake is applied.
– Do not use the vehicle key for unlocking/locking when you are inside the vehicle, as you might trigger the anti-theft alarm*. In this situation, press the unlock button.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– The convenience key must be no more than approx. 1.5 m from the door handle/luggage compartment to unlock/lock the vehicle.
– You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) on the MMI ⇨ *page 34*.
– To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.

LED and battery in vehicle key

Fig. 28 Vehicle key: Removing battery cover

LED in the vehicle key

The LED ① lights up when you press the buttons.

- The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close). ▶

89A012720AM

▸ If the LED does not flash, the battery in the vehicle key is flat. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the battery in the vehicle key

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one (battery type **CR 2032**).

▸ Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 38* and insert it at an angle into the opening ⇨ *Fig. 28* on the vehicle key.
▸ In order to release the battery cover, press the emergency key into the vehicle key as far as necessary so that the cover lifts open slightly ② ⇨ *Fig. 28*. Then lift the battery cover off from the outside.
▸ Change the battery and insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing up.
▸ Put the battery cover back on.
▸ Insert the emergency key again.

If the indicator lamp lights up and the corresponding message appears, the battery in the vehicle key is empty and must be replaced.

WARNING

If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!

– Keep the vehicle key and the key fob with batteries out of the reach of children.
– Keep new and used batteries away from children.
– If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the vehicle key and keep it away from children.
– Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 306, Information on waste disposal*.

Boot lid

General information

WARNING

– Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
– Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 37, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
– Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
– To prevent any risk of injury when closing the boot lid, make sure that no one is in its path – in particular around the hinges, the upper and lower edges and the complete surrounding edge.
– After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
– The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.
– If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is attached to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid – risk of injury!

– Applies to vehicles with power-operated/sensor-controlled boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious injuries to yourself or others in all circumstances.

CAUTION

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.

Note

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the 2x button on the vehicle key twice. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

Opening/closing boot lid

Fig. 29 Boot lid: Release catch

Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid:
Fig. 30 Driver's door: Opening boot lid

Opening boot lid

▸ Applies to vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle or the boot lid with the / 2x button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *Fig. 29*. Or:

▸ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *Fig. 29*. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked. Or:

▸ Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *Fig. 30*.

Closing boot lid

▸ Applies to vehicles without power-operated boot lid: Pull the boot lid down slightly by the handle on the inside and let it drop into the latch. Or:

▸ Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Refer to ⇨ *page 41*.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 40*.

Power-operated boot lid

Applies to: vehicles with power-operated boot lid

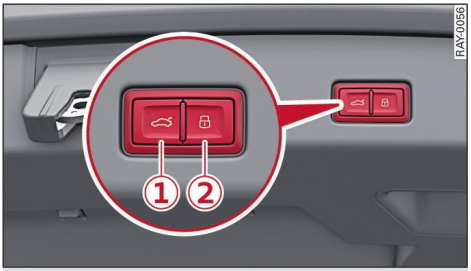


Fig. 31 Boot lid: ① close button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 40*.

Opening boot lid

▸ Press the 2x button on the vehicle key twice with the ignition switched off ⇨ *page 38, Fig. 26*. Or:

▸ Briefly pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 41, Fig. 30*. Or:

▸ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 41,* ▶

89A012720AM

Fig. 29. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked.

Closing boot lid

- Press the button inside the boot lid. Or:
- Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 41, Fig. 29*. Or:
- Press the boot lid down slightly. Or:
- With the ignition switched on, pull and hold the button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 41, Fig. 30* until the boot lid is closed. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press and hold the 2x button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than 3 m). Or:
- Press the button inside the boot lid. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press the / button inside the boot lid. The vehicle key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment and should not be inside the vehicle. The vehicle will be locked when you press the * button.

Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- You press the button or the release catch in the boot lid ⇨ *page 41, Fig. 29* again. Or:
- You press the 2x button on the convenience key*. Or:
- If it cannot open/close freely or if it is obstructed.

If you now press the button or the release catch in the boot lid ⇨ *page 41, Fig. 29* again, the boot lid will open/close again.

Storing the open position of the boot lid

The boot lid must be opened at least as far as the minimum open setting, otherwise it will not be possible to store the setting.

- Open the boot lid as far as desired. When pulling the boot lid downwards, you should move it slowly in small steps; otherwise the boot lid will close automatically.
- Press the button on the inside of the boot lid for at least four seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audible signal will be given.
- To set a higher open position, wait for five seconds and then push the boot lid carefully upwards.
- Then press the button for at least four seconds again to store the desired open position.

Opening/closing boot lid manually

The boot lid can be opened/closed manually if the power-operated mechanism fails or the vehicle battery charge is low. This will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly, less effort will be required.

- Pull the boot lid down slightly by the handle on the inside and then push the boot lid down until it closes.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 40*.

Note

If the vehicle key is in the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment while the boot lid is open, the / * buttons on the boot lid do not function.

Opening/closing boot lid with a foot gesture (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled boot lid

Fig. 32 Rear of vehicle: Kicking movement (example)

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 40*. ▶

Important: The convenience key* must be on your person. The ignition must be switched off. You must be standing centrally behind the boot lid. Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, it may also be possible to stand slightly off-centre behind the boot lid.

▸ With a single fluid movement, swing your foot forwards and back once under the bumper without touching it ⇨ *Fig. 32*. Take care not to slip. The boot lid will open/close when the system detects the gesture. The boot lid will stop moving if you perform the described movement again.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 40*.

WARNING

Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened/closed unintentionally if you have the convenience key on your person while you are behind the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened/closed unintentionally (and could hit the garage ceiling) if you have the convenience key on your person while you are behind the vehicle.

Note

The boot lid will open/close only if you make the exact gesture described above. This is to prevent the boot lid from opening/closing in similar situations, for instance if you walk between the rear of the vehicle and a garage door. In certain situations, the system may be temporarily unavailable or the functionality may be restricted. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

– If you are standing too close to or too far away from the bumper.
– If the boot lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand.
– If you park near a hedge and the wind blows the branches back and forth under the vehicle over an extended period.
– If you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or drive through an automatic car wash.
– In heavy rain.
– If the bumper is very dirty (e.g. after driving on salted roads).
– If the radio signal from the remote control key was affected by interference from other transmitters (e.g. mobile phones or remote control devices).
– If the vehicle key is in the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment while the boot lid is open, it is not possible to close the boot lid with a foot gesture.

Releasing the boot lid manually

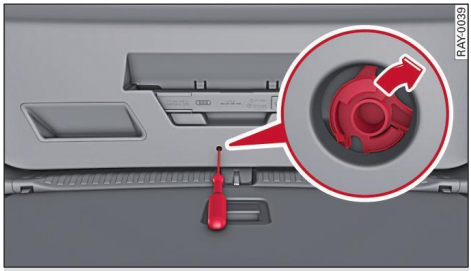


Fig. 33 Inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

▸ Fold the rear seat backrest forwards ⇨ *page 81*.
▸ To unlock the boot lid, use a suitable tool (such as a screwdriver) to press the release lever in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 40*.

WARNING

After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Child lock

The child locks disable the rear window switches and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Fig. 34 Driver's door: Controls

- ▸ To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the interior door handle and electric window switch) on each of the rear doors, press the left/right button on the driver's door ⇨ *Fig. 34*. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- ▸ Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.

Switching on the child lock deactivates the following functions:

– The rear interior door handles
– The rear window switches
– The air conditioner control console* in the rear cabin. In this case, the air conditioner in the rear cabin can still be operated using the SYNC button ⇨ *page 87* on the air conditioner console in the front cabin.

Driver message in the instrument cluster display

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the button again.

If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.
– If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Electric windows

Opening/closing windows

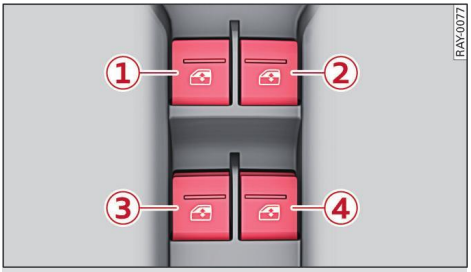


Fig. 35 Driver's door: Switches for electric windows

Switches for electric windows:

① Front left window
② Front right window
③ Rear left window
④ Rear right window

Opening/closing the windows

All of the window switches can be operated from the driver's seat. All electric windows have two-stage switches:

- ▸ To open/close the window automatically, press/pull the switch briefly to the second position. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- ▸ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

What to do if the one-touch open/close function fails to operate

You may be able to reactivate the one-touch open/close function if it fails to operate.

- ▸ Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed. ▶

▸ Release the switch and then pull it again for at least one second.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.
– Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.

Note

– The windows can be operated for a few minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
– The electric windows have a roll-back function. The window may stop moving upwards automatically, and may also re-open even when there does not appear to be an obstacle. Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.

Convenience open/close function

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Convenience open/close function for windows/sunroof*

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows and the sunroof* are opened all at once ⇨ *page 34, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

▸ Press and hold the 🔓/🔒 button on the vehicle key until all the windows have reached the desired position and the sunroof* is open/closed ⇨ ⚠. Or:
▸ Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the door handle ⇨ *page 39, Fig. 27* until all the windows and the sunroof* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows and the sunroof* are closed.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.
– Take care when closing the windows and the sunroof*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
– For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows and sunroof* when you are approx. 2 metres away from the vehicle and the vehicle is in sight. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the sunroof* when pressing the 🔒 button to close them. The windows and sunroof stop moving as soon as the 🔒 button is released.

Note

Applies to vehicles with panoramic sunroof: If the sunroof blind is closed when you open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof.

Panoramic sunroof

Operating the panoramic sunroof and sunroof blind

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic sunroof and sunroof blinds

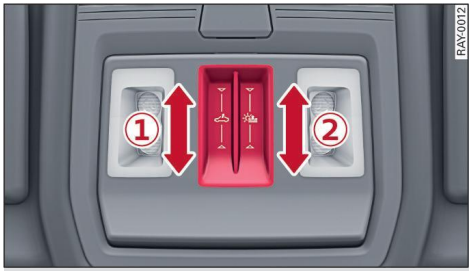


Fig. 36 Headliner: Panoramic sunroof controls ① for roof, -- for blind

The controls are operated by tapping on or swiping your finger across the corresponding area ①/② ⇨ *Fig. 36*. When opening/closing the sunroof/blind, you can stop the automatic operation at any position by touching the control surface again.

If the sunroof blind is closed when you tilt/slide open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof. ▶

Operating the sunroof

- To tilt the roof open: Tap the control surface / in the headliner (1).
- To close the tilted roof: Tap the control surface / in the headliner.
- To slide the roof open: Swipe your finger from front to rear across the control surface in the headliner.
- To close the roof: Swipe your finger from rear to front across the control surface in the headliner.

Operating the sunroof blind

The sunroof blind cannot be closed completely when the roof is open.

- To open/close the blind: Swipe your finger backwards/forwards across the control surface in the headliner (2), or tap the corresponding symbol / .

Closing the sunroof manually

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the sunroof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. If this happens, you can use the safety cut-out override to close it.

- Touch the control surface in the headliner (1) within five seconds after the roof opens automatically and swipe your finger forwards as far as . Keep your finger in this position until the roof is closed.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.
– Take care when closing the sunroof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

CAUTION

Always close the sunroof when you leave your vehicle and when it is raining or snowing to avoid damaging the interior equipment and, in particular, the electronic equipment.

Note

– The sunroof and the blind can still be operated for a few minutes after the ignition is switched off if neither of the front doors is opened.
– The sunroof cannot be opened if the temperature is too cold.

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The garage door opener allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electrical devices using control buttons inside your car. The functions are operated on the MMI. You can program several receivers, which perform the functions of up to eight[1)] hand-held transmitters.

WARNING

– When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.
– Do not allow looking at the displays and operating the centre display to distract you from watching the traffic.

Note

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults ⇨ *page 254*. ▶

1) The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

Note

Before programming your system for the garage door opener, please check that it is compatible:

– You can obtain information from your qualified workshop or at www.homelink.com. There you will also find further information on HomeLink.
– You can view information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/ HomeLink generation) on the MMI:
– On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener** > ⓘ.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇨ *page 47, Programming*, the vehicle must be within range of the system and the ignition must be switched on.

Several options are available for opening/closing the garage door or other system.

- To display the button (**garage door opener** button), press the button in the status bar ⇨ *page 24*.
- If you have programmed only one hand-held transmitter, press the button on the status bar of the centre display ⇨ *page 22*. Or:
- If you have programmed more than one hand-held transmitter, press the button on the status bar of the centre display ⇨ *page 22*, then press the appropriate button for the system. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with programmable steering wheel button: If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button, press the ✳ button ⇨ *page 30*. Or:
- Applies to vehicles with GPS link: If you have programmed the **GPS link**, press the appropriate button on the centre display (notification centre ⇨ *page 24*). The button will appear on the MMI shortly before you reach the linked system. Or:
- When you select reverse gear, the parking aid* / reversing camera* / surround view camera* is shown on the centre display. To display the buttons for the first three garage door openers, press the button in the status bar, then press the appropriate button for the system.

When transmission has been completed successfully, the driver message **Send to: XXX** will appear.

Programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The procedure described here is suitable for programming both fixed code and rolling code systems on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Programming

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have the hand-held transmitter with you, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door) you would like to program. If you program more than three hand-held transmitters, assign the first three slots to the systems you want to use in reverse gear.

- To display the garage door opener button , press the button in the status bar ⇨ *page 24*.
- To program the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the button on the centre display. Follow the instructions on the MMI. Or:
- To program **further** systems, select the following on the home screen: **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**. Select the desired button: ⊕. Follow the instructions on the MMI.
- To **reprogram** a system, select the following on the home screen: **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**. Press the button and select for the system you would like to reprogram. Select **Program**. Follow the instructions on the MMI.

For some systems, the garage door opener is available immediately after programming; for others, it must be synchronised additionally. ▶

Synchronising[1)]

Important: You must have already programmed the hand-held transmitter, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door).

To synchronise the system directly following programming, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to synchronise at a later time:

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button for the system you would like to synchronise.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

GPS link

Applies to: vehicles with GPS link

For more convenient operation, you can program in the location of your system.

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇨ *page 47* and the vehicle must be in front of the corresponding system.

- ▸ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or:

If you wish to program the GPS link for a previously programmed system:

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ Press the button for the system your vehicle is currently positioned in front of.
- ▸ Select **GPS link**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

The notification centre ⇨ *page 24* can only display up to three programmed systems. If you would like to see all the systems, press ⊞.

Renaming an assignment

You can assign individual names (with up to 10 characters) to the systems you have programmed.

- ▸ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or:

If you wish to rename a previously programmed system:

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ Press the button for the system you would like to rename.
- ▸ Select **Rename**. You may have to delete the default name first (e.g. Garage door opener 1).
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

Deleting a system

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ To delete an **individual** system, press the ☐ button for the corresponding system. After the tick mark ✓ is set, select **Delete**.
- ▸ To delete **all** systems, select: **All** > **Delete**.

Note

– Before programming a button, make sure that the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged.
– The programming process can take up to 30 seconds, and you may need to press the button on the hand-held transmitter again during that time.
– It may be necessary to synchronise the garage door opener with the system after programming. Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

Note

If a universal receiver is installed, the system must be programmed via “UR mode”.
– Switch on the ignition. ▸

[1)] Applies only to rolling code systems

– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
– Press and hold the corresponding ⊕ button.
– Select **Yes, in UR-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

89A012720AM

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off

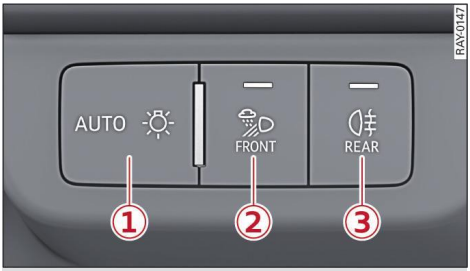


Fig. 37 Dashboard: Light switch module

① Light switch

Press ① until the desired lighting function is selected. The selected function will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO lighting function is selected automatically when the ignition is switched on.

– AUTO – The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions. On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights*, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.
– – You can turn on the dipped headlights as soon as you have switched on the ignition.
– – You can turn on the side lights at speeds below 10 km/h.
– OFF – You can switch all of the light functions off at speeds below 10 km/h.

If the dipped headlights or side lights are switched on, the corresponding indicator lamp / will light up in the instrument cluster.

② All-weather light

Applies to: vehicles with all-weather lights

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are not dazzled, for instance when driving on a wet road.

③ Rear fog light[1)]

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with country-specific regulations.

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

With the adaptive light feature, you have better vision in the dark because the lights are controlled dynamically to match the vehicle speed and road conditions, e.g. on motorways or country roads, at intersections or through corners. The adaptive light feature can only be used when the AUTO lighting function is activated.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights in these conditions and when driving after dark.

Note

– If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate. ▶

[1)] Two rear fog lights may be fitted, depending on the vehicle equipment and export market.

– The driver is responsible for complying with the relevant country-specific regulations when using the lights while driving and parking the vehicle.
– Depending on the export market, the rear lights on some vehicles may be switched on together with the headlights when the daytime running lights* are activated. On other vehicles, the rear lights remain off.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
– When the side lights are switched on with the ignition switched off, the symbol will light up in the light switch module.

Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

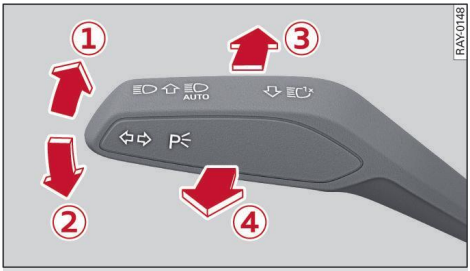


Fig. 38 Control lever: Switching light functions on/off

The turn signal lever also operates the parking lights, main beam headlights and headlight flasher.

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨ and parking lights P

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp ⇦ or ⇨ will flash. If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

The parking lights will be switched on if you operate the lever with the ignition switched off:

① Turn signals/parking lights (right side)

② Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

When the ignition is switched off, you can switch on the parking lights on both sides by switching on the side lights and locking the vehicle from outside.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beams and headlight flasher

▸ Move the lever to the appropriate position:

③ Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist* ⇨ *page 51*)

④ Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated/deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

Applies to vehicles with matrix LED headlights: Individual segments of the main beams are activated or deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users. ▶

Activating the main beam assist

Important: The lights must be set to AUTO and the main beam assist function must be activated on the MMI ⇨ *page 52*.

▸ Briefly press the lever forwards ③ ⇨ *page 51, Fig. 38* to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be activated/deactivated automatically. The indicator lamp is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on.

Activating/deactivating the main beams manually

If the main beams are not activated/deactivated as expected, you can do this manually:

▸ To activate the main beams manually, briefly press the lever forwards ③ ⇨ *page 51, Fig. 38*. The indicator lamp will light up.
▸ To deactivate the main beams manually, pull the lever towards you ④ ⇨ *page 51, Fig. 38*. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

▸ To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you ④ ⇨ *page 51, Fig. 38*. The main beam assist function will remain activated if the headlights were dipped.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. It is always the driver who is responsible for controlling the lights and making adjustments according to the light conditions and visibility.
– The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

Note

When using the lights, make sure you adhere to the relevant country-specific regulations, for example with regard to dazzling other road users. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Lights & vision** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time – You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Main beam assist – You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

Entry/exit lights

The **entry/exit lights** illuminate the area around the vehicle when the vehicle is unlocked or when the driver's door is opened with the ignition off. The entry/exit lights are operational in the dark when the lights are set to AUTO. Within certain system limits, the daytime running lights* are switched on automatically every time the vehicle is unlocked, irrespective of the ambient light conditions.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

Applies to vehicles with matrix LED headlights: If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

One exception to this is when you are driving on motorways. In this case you should turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

Applies to vehicles with LED headlights: If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand ▸

drive country, or vice versa, you have to switch the dipped beams over manually. Select **Lights for driving on left** or **Lights for driving on right**.

Digital light signatures

You can choose between various different light signatures, e.g. Light Design. The light signature is always active in conjunction with the daytime running lights or side lights.

Hazard warning lights

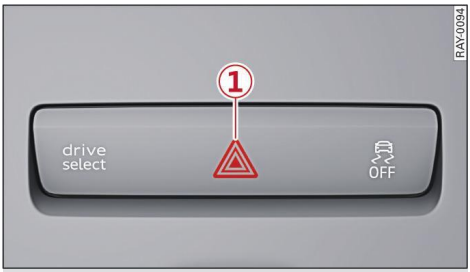


Fig. 39 Centre console: Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

▸ Press the ⚠ button (1) to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the indicator lamps ⇦ and ⇨ both flash simultaneously.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically[1)].

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp lights up, a bulb has failed. The driver message shown indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

The adaptive light feature is out of action. The dipped headlights will still be working normally. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the system on again later.

Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. For safety reasons, the dipped headlights will then be switched on permanently when the lights are set to AUTO. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Interior lights

Front interior lights

Fig. 40 Headliner: Front interior lights

Buttons for interior lights

① – Interior lights on/off

② – Courtesy lighting on/off. The interior lights are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

Touch-sensitive reading lights

- Briefly touch the surface ③ to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To use the manual dimmer function, touch the surface ③ when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Rear interior lights

Applies to: vehicles with rear reading lights

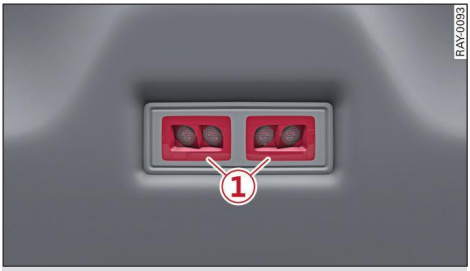


Fig. 41 Headliner: Reading lights

Reading lights

- Briefly touch the surface ① to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To use the manual dimmer function, touch the surface ① when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Background lighting

Applies to: vehicles with background lighting

The background lighting comes on when the driver's door is opened. The background lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Lights & vision** > **Background lighting**.

You can select from several colour profiles, e.g. **Maritime**.

Additional settings and profiles:

– **Brightness**: You can adjust the brightness of the entire background lighting.
– **Individual**: You can adjust the brightness and colour of the background lighting for the linear and surface lighting.
– **Audi drive select**: The colour of the linear and surface lighting changes depending on the drive select mode set.

Display brightness

You can adjust the standard brightness of the instrument cluster and display lighting. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness**.

– **Cockpit dimming**
– **Head-up display**
– **MMI**
– **Audi virtual cockpit**

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Fig. 42 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

▸ Turn the knob in the driver's door to the appropriate position:

0 – To deactivate all setting functions.

– To select the exterior mirror (left or right side). To adjust the mirror surface, tilt the knob in the desired direction.

– To heat the mirrors (depends on the outside temperature).

– To fold in the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to any of the other positions. One of the MMI settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 34*.

Tilt function* for exterior mirror on passenger side

Important: The knob must be in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side.

The mirror is tilted slightly when you select reverse gear in order to provide a better view of the kerb, for example, when reversing into a space.

You can adjust the mirror surface by tilting the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror returns to its original position from the reversing position:

– When you switch off the ignition
– If you drive forwards faster than 15 km/h.
– If the knob is no longer in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side

WARNING

Convex or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
– Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.
– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electrically retractable exterior mirrors* must NOT be folded in or out by hand. Always use the electrical power control.

Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Anti-dazzle setting

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

▸ Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you. ▶

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.
– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

Sun visors

Fig. 43 Headliner: Sun visor

Sun visor

The sun visors can be pulled out of their mountings and turned towards the door ①.

Make-up mirrors

The light* for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover ②.

Windscreen wipers

Switching on the windscreen wipers

Fig. 44 Control lever: Windscreen wipers

Fig. 45 Control lever: Rear window wiper*

▸ Move the lever to the appropriate position:

⓪ Wipers off

① Rain sensor/intermittent wipe. As long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch ⑥ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). In intermittent wipe mode, you can adjust the interval with switch ⑥. ▶

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Lights & vision** > **Rain sensor**.

(2) Slow wipe

(3) Fast wipe

(4) Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while.

(5) Wash/wipe. The number of wipe and extra-wipe cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position (5).

The windscreen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position (5) again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

If you hold the lever in position (5) for more than half a second, the extended wipe function will be activated. In this case, the windscreen wiper will move closer to the edge of the windscreen during the extra wipe, and remove the dirt collected during the wiping cycle. This function is available at speeds of up to 120 km/h.

The headlight washer system* only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the lever to position (5).

Applies to vehicles with rear wiper: (7) Rear wipe. The frequency of the rear wiper depends on the frequency of the windscreen wipers.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

Applies to vehicles with rear wiper: (8) Rear wash/wipe. The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position (8).

WARNING

– The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
– Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
– Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇨ *page 58, Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades*.

CAUTION

– In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
– Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position (0)) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Note

– The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the lever to any position. Single wipe (lever in position (4)) also works when the ignition is switched off.
– Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
– If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades

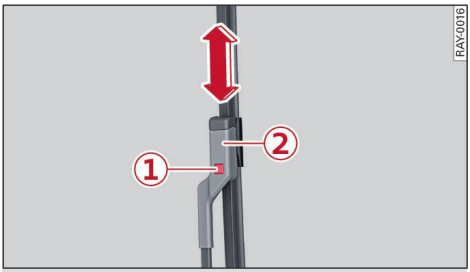


Fig. 46 Windscreen wipers: Changing wiper blades

Wiper change position

- Switch the ignition off, move the windscreen wiper lever to position (4) ⇨ *page 56, Fig. 44* and hold it there until the wipers move into the wiper change position.
- To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and hold the lever in position (4) until the wipers have returned to their original position, or drive faster than 12 km/h.

You can also switch the wiper change position on/off on the MMI system:

- Switch the windscreen wipers off (position (0) ⇨ *page 56, Fig. 44*).
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Wiper change position**.

Cleaning wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇨ *table on page 278*.

Changing wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Keep hold of the wiper blade.
- Press the release button (1) on the wiper blade.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the mounting on the wiper arm (2).
- Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm. You should hear it engage.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- Switch off the wiper change function.

WARNING

– For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.
– Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– The wipers must be in the wiper change position before they are lifted off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
– Never move your vehicle or operate the lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

Note

– You can also use the wiper change position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.
– You cannot activate the wiper change position when the bonnet is open.

Cleaning/changing the rear wiper blade

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper

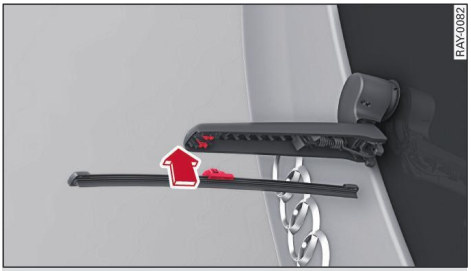


Fig. 47 Rear window wiper: Attaching the wiper blade ▶

Cleaning the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇨ *table on page 278*.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the retainer.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.

WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a fault in the wiper system. The driver message shown in addition indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message remains displayed and does not disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. You can continue to use all the other functions of the windscreen wiper lever that do not use the rain sensor. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Sitting correctly and safely

Ensuring the correct seating position

General information

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring that all vehicle occupants are sitting in the correct position and that they stay in this position for the entire journey. Ensure that:

– Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their seat correctly ⇨ *page 60*.
– The steering wheel is set correctly ⇨ *page 62*.
– The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area ⇨ *page 55*.
– Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 63*.
– Every vehicle occupant has fastened their seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 64*.
– Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the person occupying the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 71*.
– Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇨ *page 71*. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 72*.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The list below contains examples of incorrect positions which can be dangerous to all vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– Never stand up in the vehicle.
– Never stand on the seats.
– Never kneel on the seats.
– Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
– Never lean against the dash panel.
– Never lie down on the rear seat.
– Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
– Never sit sideways.
– Never lean out of the window.
– Never put your feet out of the window.
– Never put your feet on the dash panel.
– Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
– Never ride in the footwell.
– Never sit on the armrests.
– Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
– Never climb into the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.

Note

If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

Front seats

General information

Ensure that:

– You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent.
– Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard.
– Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard.
– Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion. ▶

– The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with your back.
– You have a good view of your surroundings.
– You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster, warning/indicator lamps and head-up display*.

WARNING

– If you are too close to the steering wheel/dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– To reduce the risk of injury to the driver in the case of sudden braking or an accident, you should never drive with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach – risk of injury!
– Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
– Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
– Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.

CAUTION

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the roof. This could cause damage.

Manual adjustment of seats

Applies to: vehicles with manual seat adjustment

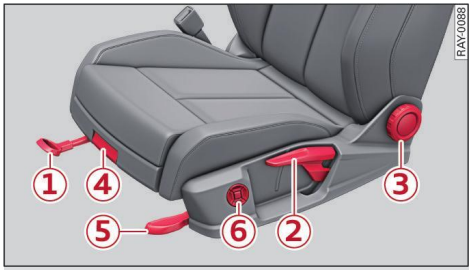


Fig. 48 Front seat: Adjuster controls

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

▸ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever ① and move the seat.
▸ To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/press the lever ②.

Adjusting the backrest

▸ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob ③.

Adjusting the thigh support

▸ To move the thigh support in or out, lift the handle ④ and slide it in either direction.

Adjusting the seat cushion angle

▸ To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, pull/press the lever ⑤.

Adjusting the lumbar support

▸ To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button ⑥.

WARNING

– Never adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.

▶

– Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the seat adjustment can cause injuries.
– Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belts and airbags could fail to restrain the occupants properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

Electric adjustment of seats

Applies to: vehicles with electric seat adjustment

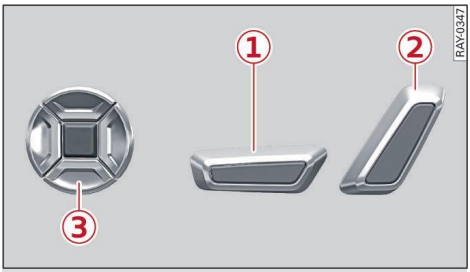


Fig. 49 Front seat: Buttons for seat adjustment

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

- To move the seat forwards/backwards, push button ① forwards/backwards.
- To move the seat up/down, press the rear area of button ① upwards/downwards.
- To adjust the seat cushion, press the front area of button ① upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the backrest

- To move the backrest forwards/backwards, press button ② forwards/backwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button ③.

WARNING

– Never adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
– The electric front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is off. To avoid accidental injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the height adjustment can cause injuries.
– Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belts and airbags could fail to restrain the occupants properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

Front centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with front centre armrest

The front centre armrest is located between the front seats.

Adjusting the centre armrest

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- To move the armrest forwards/backwards, move it in the corresponding direction.
- To adjust the angle, lift the armrest until it engages in the desired position.
- To move the armrest back to the initial position, lift the armrest slightly from the top position and then fold it back down.

WARNING

In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit arm movement – risk of injury!

Steering wheel

General information

Ensure that:

– Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel.
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
– You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster and head-up display* at all times.
– You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving. ▶

WARNING

– Before setting off, make sure that the steering wheel is correctly adjusted and that it cannot slip out of the engaged position – risk of accident!
– If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver airbag cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

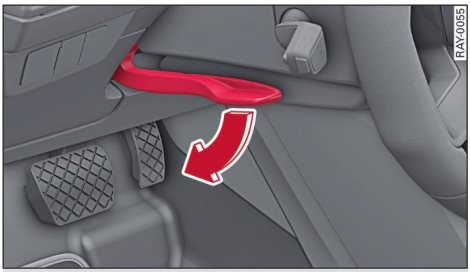


Fig. 50 Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

▸ Press the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow.
▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
▸ Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.

WARNING

– Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off – risk of accident!
– Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

Head restraints

General information

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

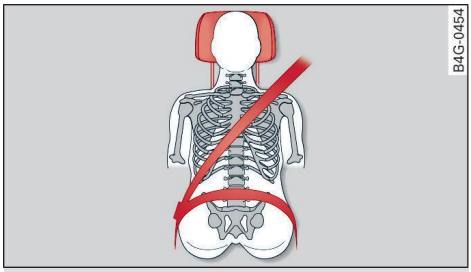


Fig. 51 Correctly adjusted head restraint

Ensure that:

– The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.
– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head.
– The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled all the way up.

WARNING

– There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.
– Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇨ *page 71*. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

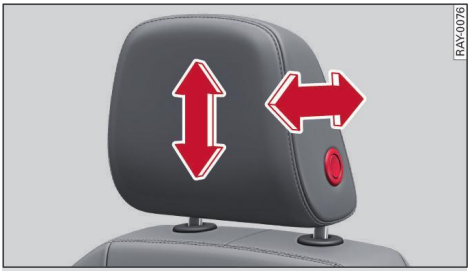


Fig. 52 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting head restraint

- To raise or lower the head restraint or move it backwards, press the side button and move the head restraint in the desired direction. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.
- To move the head restraint forwards, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

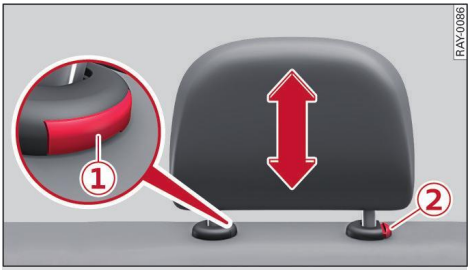


Fig. 53 Rear seat: Adjusting/removing head restraint

Adjusting head restraint

- To raise the head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- To lower the head restraint, press the button ② and move the head restraint downwards. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Removing head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇨ *page 81*.
- Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
- Press button ② ⇨ *Fig. 53*. If the head restraint has an additional button, press that button as well ①. At the same time, pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 63*.

Installing head restraint

- Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇨ *page 81*.
- Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place.
- Press the button ② and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Seat belts

General information

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore always wear your seat belt correctly and you should also ensure that all vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly while the vehicle is moving.

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle occupant must still wear a seat belt. In addition to their normal function of protecting the vehicle occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.

– All vehicle occupants (including the driver) must put their seat belt on correctly before every trip and must always keep it on while ▶

the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children who are being secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the seat belt.

– In the event of an accident, anyone not wearing a seat belt will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
– Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one person (including small children) with the same seat belt.
– Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
– To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
– To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 60*.
– Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals ⇨ *page 278*. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
– The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
– Seat belts which have been worn in an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Wearing a seat belt correctly

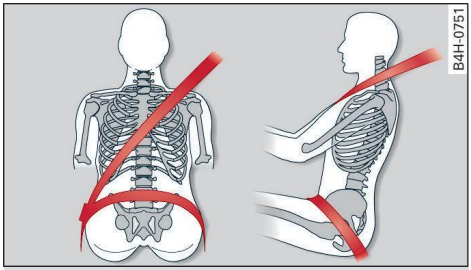


Fig. 54 Positioning seat belts over lap/shoulder

Fig. 55 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly ⇨ *Fig. 54*.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

– The lap belt section of the seat belt should be worn tightly across the hips.
– The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder.
– The seat belt must always make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇨ *Fig. 55*. ▶

WARNING

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.

– Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
– The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
– The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm, behind the back or over the neck or face.
– The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
– The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.
– Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
– The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
– Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.
– Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
– Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
– During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.

CAUTION

Make sure that no velcro fasteners or sharp objects, such as zip fasteners or rivets on clothing, are in the way of the seat belt while you are wearing it; otherwise the seat belt could be damaged.

Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

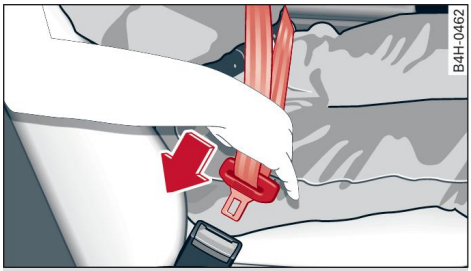


Fig. 56 Latch plate and buckle

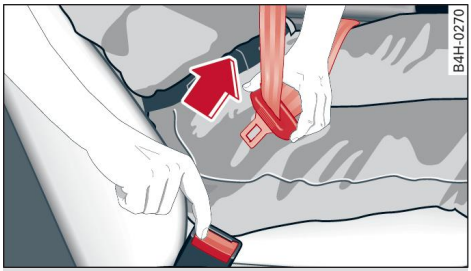


Fig. 57 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 64*.

Fastening the seat belt

▸ To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
▸ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇨ *Fig. 56*.
▸ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

▸ Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇨ *Fig. 57*. The latch plate is released and springs out.
▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

Seat belt monitor

– If the warning lamp lights up/flashes, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened during driving. Audible warning signals may also be given.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the status of the rear seat belts may also be monitored by the following indicator lamps:

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the corresponding rear seat is not occupied.

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

Adjusting seat belt height

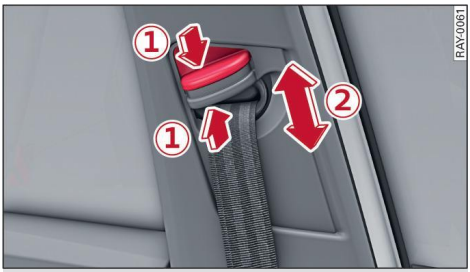


Fig. 58 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting (2) upwards.
- To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism (1) and slide the guide fitting (2) downwards.
- After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

Note

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

Additional seat belt functions

Automatic belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

Belt force limiters

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

Belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be taken up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Note

Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Memory function

General information

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function can be used to store and call up seat profiles via the recall buttons in the door trim.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, settings such as the position of the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors can be stored.

Storing and calling up seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim.

Storing seat profile

- Press the SET button. When the LED in the button lights up, a seat profile can be stored.
- Press one of the numbered recall buttons. A tone will sound to confirm that the settings have been stored.

Recalling seat profile

- If the corresponding door is open and the ignition is off, briefly press the recall button once. All the settings for the seat profile will be applied.
- If the corresponding door is closed or the ignition is on, press and hold the recall button until the seat profile settings have been applied.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, never recall seat settings when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
– If necessary, the recall function can be stopped at any time by pressing the seat adjustment button in the door/on the display for the relevant seat.

Airbag system

General information

WARNING

– If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened ⇨ *page 60*. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
– Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat. To ensure that the airbag systems can open without obstructions, never lean forwards or lean on the door or the side window. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the airbags are triggered.
– Persons, pets or objects positioned between the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin – risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that there are no objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Never secure or carry objects in the area of inflation of the airbag systems, in particular around the steering wheel, on the dashboard, against the doors, on the windows, on the centre armrest and in the footwell.
– Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.
– The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
– If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. The centre airbags inflate from the backrest and the protection they provide would otherwise be seriously impaired.
– Applies to vehicles with centre front airbag: Any protective covers fitted over the seats must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with centre airbag. The centre armrest must remain closed while the vehicle is in motion. The centre front airbag inflates from the driver's seat backrest and the protection it provides would otherwise be seriously impaired.
– Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
– Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper ▶

servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.

– The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.
– The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.

Note

If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions ⇨ *page 71*.

Safety system monitoring

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch on the ignition.

If the indicator lamp does not light up when you switch on the ignition, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Description

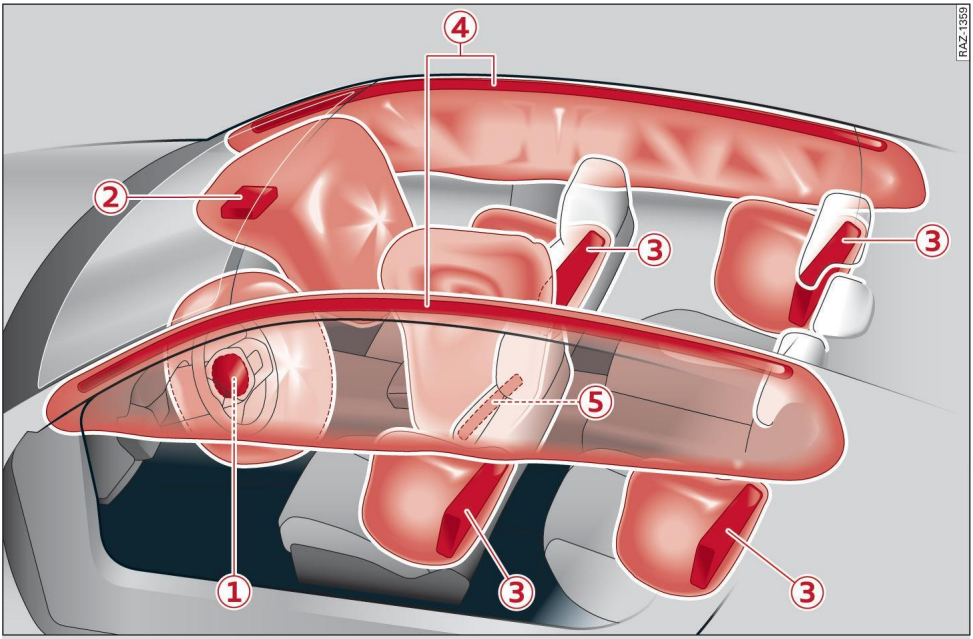


Fig. 59 Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered)

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”. The following airbags are fitted in your vehicle:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag
③ Front side airbags and rear side airbags (optional)
④ Head-protection airbags
⑤ Centre front airbag (if applicable)

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts.

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled with gas. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. As the seat belt-restrained occupants move in the direction of the impact, the inflated airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. ▶

the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system works when the ignition is on.

Deactivating the front passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag

Fig. 60 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag

Fig. 61 Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of front passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always switch the front passenger's airbag off ⇨ *page 73*. If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

- ▸ Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 38*.
- ▸ To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the emergency key to the (OFF) position in the key-operated switch ⇨ *Fig. 60*. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF will light up and remain lit.
- ▸ The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the emergency key to the (ON) position. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG ON will light up briefly.

WARNING

- – A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always check while driving that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains lit at all times.
- – Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated – risk of severe or fatal injury! In this case, while driving, always check that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is not lit.

Child restraint systems

General information

Fig. 62 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. ▸

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

– Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
– Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
– Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
– Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
– Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
– Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, potentially causing fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
– If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
– Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child restraint system.
– The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the head restraint if it hinders installation ⇨ *page 63*. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.
– Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
– NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
  – Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.
  – Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch ⇨ *page 71*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
– If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.

▶

– The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

The right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

Audi recommends child restraint systems from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems ⇨ *table on page 74*, ⇨ *table on page 75*.

In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the front passenger's seat in exceptional circumstances. A child restraint system must not be used on the front passenger's seat if this is prohibited by the relevant country-specific regulations. If the relevant country-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system, check the tables ⇨ *table on page 74* and ⇨ *table on page 75* to see whether your system can be secured on the front passenger's seat in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following:

Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems

– Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.
– Vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag*: The front passenger's airbag must be deactivated ⇨ *page 71*.

Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems

– Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. ▶

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with ISOFIX

Child restraint system	ISOFIX size category	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat*	
		Outer	Centre	Front passenger's airbag on	Front passenger's airbag off*
Category 0: Up to 10 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
Category 0+: Up to 13 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
	D/R2				
	C/R3				
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	D/R2	IL	X	X	IL
	C/R3				
	B/F2	IL, IUF	X	IL	IL
	B1/F2x				
	A/F3				
Category 2: 15 to 25 kg	–	IL	X	IL	IL
Category 3: 22 to 36 kg	–	IL	X	IL	IL
i-Size child restraint system	F2x/R2/B2	i-U	X	X	i-U

– **ISOFIX size category**: The size category specifies the weight range for which the child restraint system is approved. On child restraint systems with universal or semi-universal approval, the size category is specified on the ECE approval label. Each child restraint system carries a label specifying the weight category.

– **IL**: Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISOFIX child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.

– **IUF**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system with universal approval.

– **i-U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of an i-Size child restraint system with universal approval.

– **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system. ▶

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with the seat belt

Child restraint system	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat	
	Outer	Centre[1)]	Front passenger's airbag on	Front passenger's airbag off*
Category 0 Up to 10 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 0+ Up to 13 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	U, L	U	U	U
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	U, L	U	U	U

– **U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with universal approval.
– **L**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
– **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.
– [1)]: Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

Note

– Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.
– For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISOFIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Fig. 63 Rear seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 71*.

The bottom ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and on the front passenger's seat*. There are two bottom ISOFIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system, according to the table ⇨ *table on page 74*.

▸ Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 44*.
▸ Remove the covers* from the two ISOFIX anchorages.
▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
▸ Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages.

▶

▸ If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the vehicle ⇨ *page 76*.

WARNING

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
– The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 71*.

▸ Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 44*.
▸ When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
▸ After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.
▸ If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage ⇨ *page 76*, if possible.

WARNING

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
– To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.

Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage

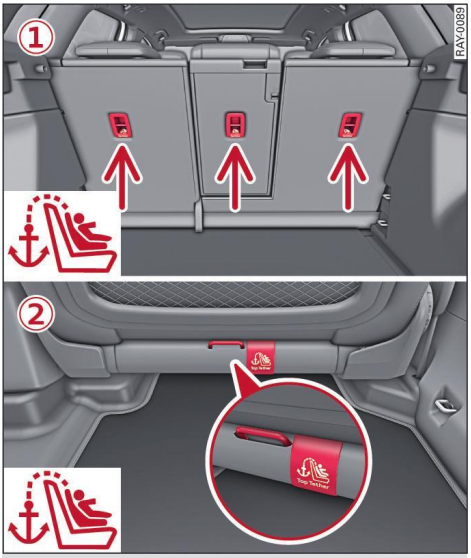


Fig. 64 ① Rear backrest / ② Back of front passenger's seat: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap

Fig. 65 Rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 71*.

The top tether anchorages for additionally securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap are located behind the outer and centre* ▶

rear seats and the lower section of the back of the front passenger's seat*.

- ▸ Raise the head restraint behind the child restraint system.
- ▸ Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
- ▸ Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇨ *Fig. 65*. When doing so, make sure that the belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.
- ▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- ▸ If necessary, lower the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

WARNING

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Storage and convenience

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, several power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle).

12-volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12-volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W. Do not connect several devices to the vehicle sockets at the same time.

The 12-volt sockets are marked with the 12V symbol. They are located in the front centre console, in the rear cabin* and in the luggage compartment side trim*.

USB inputs

Applies to: vehicles with USB inputs

You can use the USB inputs to charge mobile devices. Depending on the vehicle model, USB inputs may be indicated by one of the following symbols: ⇠, ⇦ or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident – danger to life!
- Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

CAUTION

- Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
- To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the power sources.

Note

Do not plug any additional devices into the sockets while the compressor*⇨ *page 284* supplied with the vehicle is in use. The power rating for the sockets may be exceeded for a short period of time while the compressor* is in use.

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders

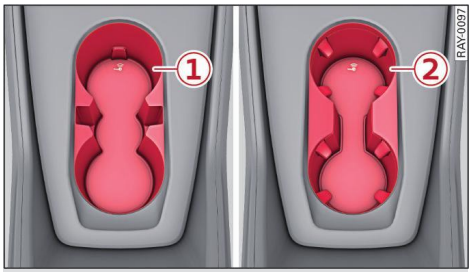


Fig. 66 Front centre console: Cup holder

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, there may be cup holders in the front centre console and rear centre armrest, and bottle holders in the door trim.

Cup holders in front centre console

▸ Place your drinks in the holder ① or ②.

Cup holders in rear centre armrest*

▸ Fold down the centre armrest* to use the cup holder.

WARNING

- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle's equipment.

Storage compartments

Further storage compartments

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find several storage compartments and retainers that can be used to safely store items. These include, for example, the glove box.

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

Luggage compartment

General information

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- Close the luggage compartment cover before starting the journey if the vehicle load permits this.
- Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.

WARNING

- Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could injure the vehicle occupants in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.
- Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover must always be securely attached when in use – risk of accident!
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
- If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
- The stretch net* is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!
- Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle ⇨ *page 303*.
- Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.

▶

– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the children would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
– Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 64*.
– Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
– The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.
– Make sure that the rear backrest is securely locked in position so that the seat belt can provide proper protection on the centre rear seat.
– Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.
– If the seat belt is trapped when the backrest is returned to its upright position, fold the backrest down again and free the seat belt. Hold the seat belt in one hand while you carefully fold up the backrest.
– The retaining hooks* should only be used to hold objects weighing up to 3 kg. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!

CAUTION

– Lower the rear head restraints ⇨ *page 64* before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
– When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are in their guides so that they cannot be caught up and damaged in the catches for the backrest. It is also important to remove any other objects from the rear seats to avoid damaging the backrest when folding it forwards.
– If you need to adjust the front seats when either of the rear backrests is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
– Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

Note

– The tyre pressures must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying ⇨ *page 272*.
– Securing straps are available from specialist retailers.

Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover

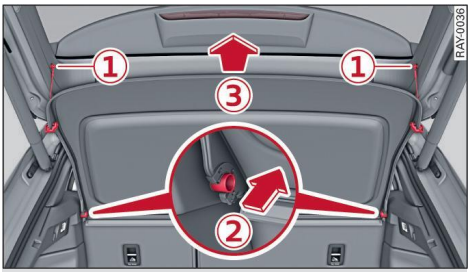


Fig. 67 Luggage compartment: Removing and installing luggage compartment cover

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 79*.

▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, unhook the cords ①.
▸ Press the luggage compartment cover down and out of the retainers in the direction of the arrow ②.
▸ Take out the cover in the direction of the arrow ③.
▸ To install the luggage compartment cover, place it loosely on the retainers.
▸ Press the luggage compartment cover onto the retainers on both sides.
▸ Attach the cords ① to the boot lid. ▶

Note

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, it may be possible to store the luggage compartment cover under the adjustable floor panel ⇨ *page 83*. You can remove the side inserts to do so.

Folding the outer backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrest

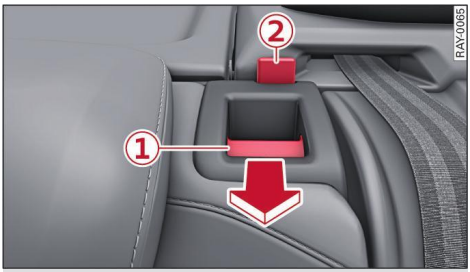


Fig. 68 Outer backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the backrests can be folded down individually or together.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 79*.

Folding the outer backrest up/down

- ▸ Pull the release lever ① in the direction indicated by the arrow and fold down the backrest.
- ▸ When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking ② is no longer visible.

Folding the centre backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding centre backrest

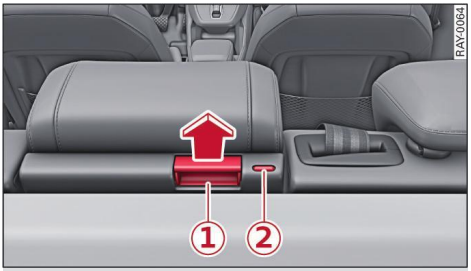


Fig. 69 Centre backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 79*.

Folding the centre backrest up/down

- ▸ Pull the release lever ① in the direction indicated by the arrow and fold down the backrest.
- ▸ Move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking on the lock indicator ② is no longer visible.

Load guard

Applies to: vehicles with load guard

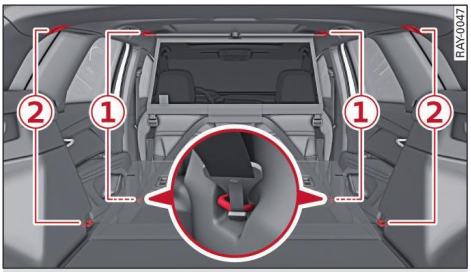


Fig. 70 Backrest folded down: Load guard

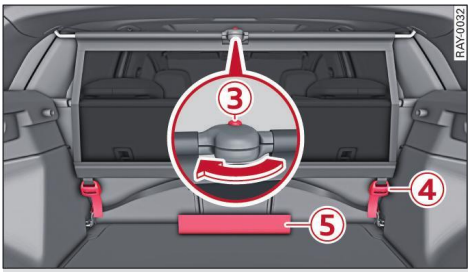


Fig. 71 Luggage compartment: Load guard ▶

The load guard prevents objects in the luggage compartment from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment. You can attach the load guard behind the front or rear seats. Use the retainers (1) or (2) to do so.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 79*.

Installing the load guard

- ▸ Take the load guard out of the bag (5) and unroll it.
- ▸ Unfold the load guard completely. You should hear it click into position.
- ▸ To hook the load guard into the retainers (1), the backrests must be folded down ⇨ *page 81*.
- ▸ Before hooking the load guard into the retainers (2), remove the luggage compartment cover ⇨ *page 80*.
- ▸ Secure the load guard in the top retainers first, then in the bottom retainers. Make sure that the securing belts (4) are facing towards the rear when securing.
- ▸ Pull the securing belts (4) tight.
- ▸ Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you need it.

Removing the load guard

- ▸ Remove the luggage compartment cover (if fitted)⇨ *page 80*.
- ▸ To unhook the load guard, loosen the securing belts (4).
- ▸ Proceed in the reverse order to detach the load guard from the retainers.
- ▸ Retract the load guard by pressing button (3) and fold the load guard in the middle.
- ▸ Roll up the load guard and stow it in the bag (5).

Fastening rings and stretch net

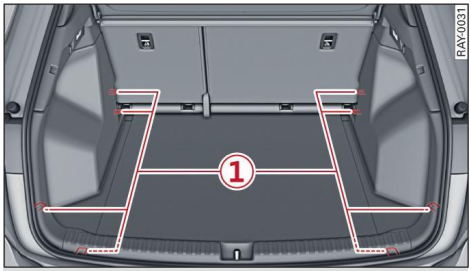


Fig. 72 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

Fig. 73 Luggage compartment: Stretch net* attached

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 79*.

Fastening rings

There are fastening rings (1) in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

- ▸ Use the fastening rings to secure items in the luggage compartment.

Stretch net

Applies to: vehicles with stretch net

The stretch net (2) can be used to secure light objects in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Insert the hooks of the stretch net into the fastening rings.

Floor panel

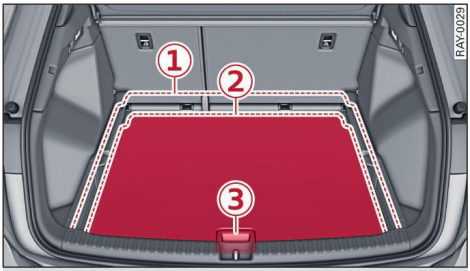


Fig. 74 Luggage compartment: Lowering/raising* floor panel

Removing and installing the floor panel

- To remove the floor panel, lift it by the handle ③.
- Pull the floor panel towards the rear of the vehicle and out of the luggage compartment.
- To insert the floor panel, slide it all the way in towards the backrest.

Lowering/raising the floor panel

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable floor panel

The height of the floor panel can be adjusted to increase the loading height of the luggage compartment or to facilitate loading/unloading.

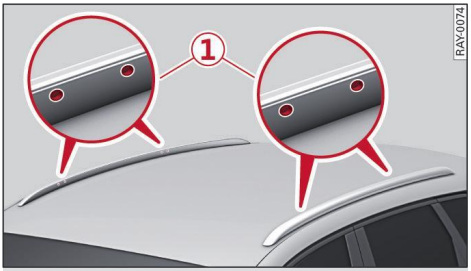
- To lower the floor panel, lift it by the handle ③.
- Then pull the floor panel towards you slightly and re-insert it lower down at position ②.
- To raise the floor panel, take it out and re-insert it in the upper position ①.

Roof carrier

General information

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

Applies to: vehicles without roof railings
Fig. 75 Roof: Attachment points



Applies to: vehicles with roof railings
Fig. 76 Roof railings: Attachment points

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

– The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Only use roof carriers suitable for use with your vehicle. Audi recommends using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.
– Ensure that roof carriers are only fitted at the points provided on the vehicle ①.
– You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle ⇨ *page 303*. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Please do not exceed the maximum carrying load of the carrier system you are using.

WARNING

– Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.

89A012720AM

CAUTION

Please take care that the boot lid and panoramic sunroof* do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.

For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Description

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, one of the following options is available:

– A single-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed settings individually in the vehicle.
– A two-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed at the front left and right individually.
– A three-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed at the front left and right and the temperature at the rear individually.

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the sunroof (if fitted) closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The deluxe automatic air conditioner will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the heater has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).

Enhanced air filter with activated carbon

When the blower is switched on, the filter reduces the concentration of fine particulate matter and pollen and neutralises odours in the vehicle interior.

Note

– Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
– Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
– If you notice, for instance, that the seat or rear window heating (if fitted) is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the energy management system. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.
– Depending on the country, the air conditioner may contain fluorinated greenhouse gases. Further information is provided on a sticker in the front compartment.

89A012720AM

Controls on dashboard

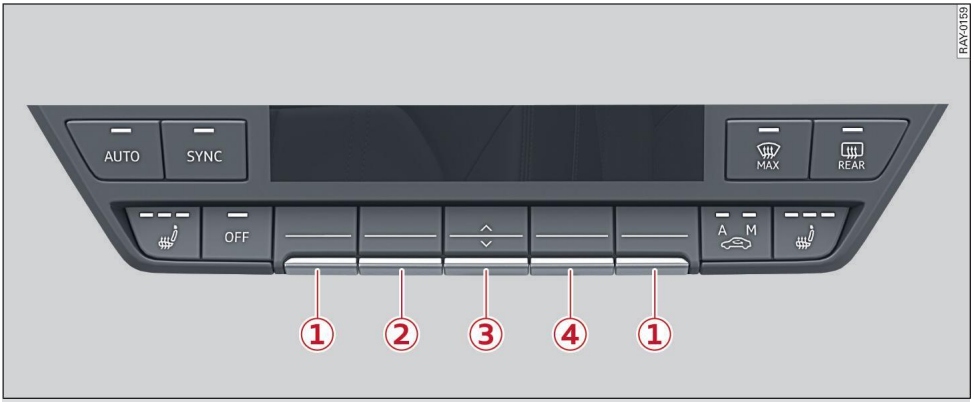


Fig. 77 Deluxe automatic air conditioner: Controls

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ ⚠.

The functions can be switched on/off using the buttons and controlled using the rocker switches. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

OFF Switching the air conditioner on/off

The air conditioner can be switched on and off by pressing the OFF button. The air conditioner will also switch on if you press one of the other buttons. When the air conditioner is switched off, the supply of air from outside the car is cut off.

A/C Cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

You can select the following settings for cooling mode after pressing rocker switch ③:

– **MAX**: Maximum cooling power is activated on the air conditioner. This function should only be used for short periods of time to avoid unnecessary energy consumption. This function can cause the windows to steam up in unfavourable climatic conditions.
– **ECO**: Energy saving mode is activated on the air conditioner.
– **ON**: Cooling mode is activated and regulated automatically.
– **OFF**: Cooling mode is deactivated.

AUTO Automatic mode

The automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, output and distribution are regulated automatically. The automatic mode is switched off immediately when you operate any of the manual air controls.

The air recirculation mode is also switched on when AUTO is activated.

Temperature

Applies to vehicles with 1-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The temperature can be set using the left rocker switch ①.

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The temperature for the front occupants can be set separately using the rocker switches ①.

The temperature can be adjusted between 16 °C (+60 °F) and 28 °C (+84 °F). Outside this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear on the air conditioner display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output. ▶

SYNC Synchronisation

Applies to vehicles with 1-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The SYNC button remains permanently active.

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: When you press the SYNC button, the temperature for the driver's side is applied to the passenger's side. Synchronisation is deactivated as soon as the setting is changed on the passenger's side.

Applies to vehicles with 3-zone deluxe air conditioner: When the child locks are activated, the set temperature is also applied to the rear cabin.

Blower

You should leave the blower on and make sure the setting is not too low to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated.

You can adjust the blower speed manually using rocker switch (2). Press the AUTO button for automatic control of the blower speed.

Air distribution

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them towards the side windows.

Rocker switch (4) can be used to adjust the air distribution. Press the rocker switch (4) repeatedly until the desired air distribution is shown on the display of the air conditioner control console. Press the AUTO button for automatic air distribution.

MAX Defrosting

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the vents below the windscreen.

The defrosting mode is switched on when the MAX button is pressed. Open the side vents and point them towards the side windows. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature is regulated automatically. A/C cooling mode is automatically switched on depending on the ambient temperature. Defrosting mode is switched off when the MAX, AUTO or button or rocker switches (2) or (4) are pressed.

Applies to vehicles with windscreen heating: At low outside temperatures, the windscreen heating is switched on automatically. Depending on the outside temperature, you may be able to switch the windscreen heating on manually by pressing the MAX button.

Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior ⇨ ⚠.

The air recirculation mode can be controlled manually or automatically:

– To switch on the manual air recirculation mode: Press the button repeatedly until the LED above the letter M lights up.
– To switch on the automatic air recirculation mode: Press the button repeatedly until the LED above the letter A lights up.

The mode in which air recirculation is operating can be changed by pressing the, AUTO or MAX button.

REAR Rear window heating

If the rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the vehicle battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the power unit is switched on, and switches off automatically after 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch the rear window heating on/off, press the REAR button. To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the REAR button for at least two seconds. The exterior mirror heating (if fitted) is switched on automatically when the rear window heating is on.

Vents

The centre and outer vents in the dashboard can be opened and closed via the levers on the ▶

louvres. The lever in the centre of the outlets can also be used to adjust the direction of air flow.

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels. Press the button once to activate the highest level ⇨. Press the button repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When no LEDs are lit, the seat heating is switched off.

WARNING

- You should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. The windows can mist over as a result – risk of accident!
- If the air recirculation or automatic air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO_2 can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation / automatic air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: The vehicle has functions which activate the seat heating automatically. People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature must make sure that the seat heating is switched off at the start of the journey to ensure that they do not burn themselves.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: An alternating magnetic field is generated when the seat heating is switched on. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

- To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.
- Only use the seat heating when the seat is dry.
- Only place dry objects on the seats.
- Do not spill any liquid on the seats.
- Covering the seats can impair the seat heating function. Do not use seat covers and do not place any objects (e.g. jackets, blankets or bags) on the seats when the seat heating is switched on.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

For the sake of the environment

Switching off A/C cooling mode saves energy.

Note

Applies to vehicles with seat heating: If the front passenger's seat heating was on when you last switched off the ignition, it will be switched on automatically only if the ignition is switched on again within ten minutes.

Controls in rear

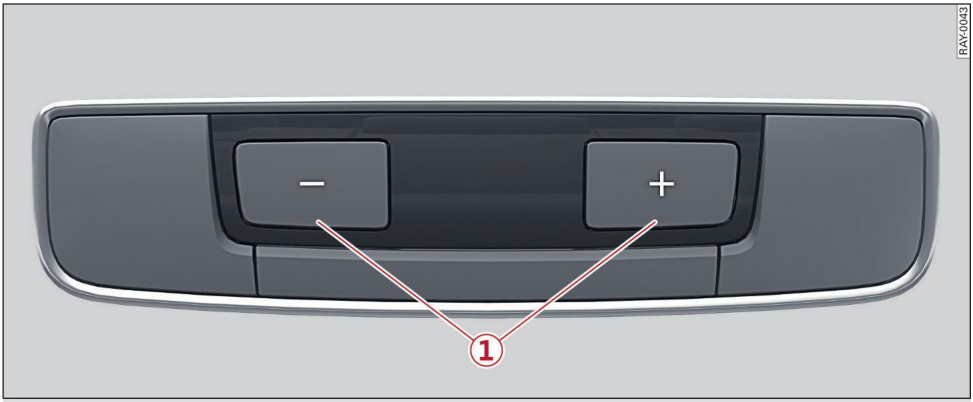


Fig. 78 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: Controls

Foot-level vents are provided underneath the front seats for air conditioning in the rear cabin. Adjustable vents are provided on the centre console in addition to the foot-level outlets.

The temperature can be adjusted using the - and + buttons (1).

Further settings

Applies to: vehicles with 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

Further settings can be adjusted.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C**.

Automatic air recirculation

Applies to: vehicles with 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

If air pollution is detected, air recirculation is regulated automatically when this function is activated ⇨ ⚠ *in Controls on dashboard on page 88*.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

A/C Air conditioner: CO2 concentration remains high. Please air vehicle. See owner's manual

Ventilate the vehicle immediately. If the driver message remains displayed, do not drive on. Contact a qualified workshop. If the message disappears, drive to a qualified workshop soon.

A/C Air conditioner: high CO2 concentration. Ventilate vehicle. See owner's manual

Ventilate the vehicle. If the driver message remains displayed, do not drive on. Contact a qualified workshop. If the message disappears, drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Air conditioning restricted

The battery cooling has been increased to protect the high-voltage battery. The air conditioning is restricted as a result.

Steering wheel heating

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

▸ Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel to switch the steering wheel heating on/off.

Auxiliary air conditioner

Description

The auxiliary air conditioner heats or cools the vehicle interior. The function can be used when the drive system is switched off. ▶

You can control the auxiliary air conditioner via the MMI or via the myAudi app.

Conditions for operation

The high-voltage battery must be sufficiently charged.

Note

– If the auxiliary air conditioning is active, the charging status of the high-voltage battery may decrease even when it is being charged.
– If the auxiliary air conditioning is on, it is not switched off automatically when the vehicle is started or stopped.
– The auxiliary air conditioner will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the high-voltage battery charge is too low, irrespective of whether the vehicle is being charged at this time.

Operation

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C** > **Auxiliary air conditioner**.

Immediate start

You can switch the auxiliary air conditioner on/off immediately via the button. When the function is switched on, a coloured bar will light up above the button and the time remaining will be displayed.

After an immediate start, the auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for a maximum of 30 minutes.

Timer programming

You can set and activate up to two timers for the departure time.

▸ Select a timer via >.
▸ Set the date and select **Next**.
▸ Set the time (departure time) and select **OK**.
▸ If desired, set the second timer.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days.

The auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for approx. 15 minutes after the departure time is reached.

After the ignition is switched off

After the ignition is switched off, information on active timers is shown on the display. You can press the button to start the programmed air conditioner immediately or press > to open the auxiliary air conditioner menu.

Target temperature

Applies to vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner: You can set the target temperature for the auxiliary air conditioner via the myAudi App.

Note

– To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇨ *page 253*.
– The auxiliary air conditioning can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been set.
– You can control the air conditioning in the vehicle interior when charging the high-voltage battery via the charging timers ⇨ *page 110*. The performance of the air conditioner depends on the power rating of the mains connection.

Further settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C** > **Auxiliary air conditioner** > ⚙.

A/C when unlocking

When this function is activated, the air conditioner is switched on for up to five minutes after the vehicle is unlocked. The function is switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Convenience aux. A/C

Applies to: vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner

You can select whether certain convenience functions, such as the seat heating (if fitted), are to be activated with the auxiliary air conditioner. You can select the corresponding zones. ▶

Glass heating

Applies to: vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner and glass heating

You can select whether the rear window and mirrors are also to be heated when the auxiliary air conditioner is on.

Note

Applies to vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner: Depending on the charging mode selected, the convenience auxiliary air conditioner may be restricted while the vehicle is charging.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

The auxiliary air conditioning is currently unavailable due to a fault.

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Fluids in the air conditioner

Refrigerant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the front compartment provides information about the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. This sticker is located in the front section of the front compartment or at the front or rear of the bonnet.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Type of refrigerant
	Type of lubricant
	Refer to workshop information (only available to Audi workshops and other qualified workshops)
	Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Flammable refrigerant
	Ensure that all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle which have been removed from old vehicles or recycled.

Lubricant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the front compartment provides information about the type of lubricant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. For information about the quantity of lubricant used, please contact a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be carried out by qualified and certified personnel who have been trained in accordance with the standards required in the specific country, e.g. SAE norms J2845 and J2911.

- Refrigerant is flammable. Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other ignition sources – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant is under pressure and could explode if it is heated – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant may produce toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces; such vapours must not be inhaled – risk of fatal injury!

Note

Components from old vehicles or recycled components must never be used when repairing the evaporator of the air conditioning system.

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Fig. 79 Centre console: Starting the power unit

Your vehicle is powered by an electric motor. The ignition and power unit can be switched on separately just like on vehicles with combustion engines. Electronic systems such as the MMI are available when only the ignition is switched on, although the vehicle is not ready to drive at this stage. The vehicle cannot be moved electrically until the power unit has been switched on and activated.

Important: The key must be in the vehicle.

Switching on the power unit

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Select transmission position D or R. The power unit will be switched on.

A glance at the power meter reveals whether or not the drive system is switched on ⇨ *page 17*.

Switching off the power unit

- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Press the START STOP button. The drive system will be switched off. The parking brake will be applied.

You can also switch off the power unit by pressing the Ⓟ button ⇨ *page 94, Fig. 80* when the vehicle is stationary. In this case, the ignition will remain switched on.

Switching off the power unit in an emergency

If necessary, the power unit can be switched off in an emergency* while the vehicle is still moving.

- ▸ Press the START STOP button twice in quick succession or press and hold it.

Switching the ignition on/off

The ignition is switched on automatically when you get into the vehicle with the key and press the brake pedal.

The ignition is switched off automatically when you apply the parking brake and leave the vehicle.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

– Driver's door has been opened.
– Driver's seat belt has been unbuckled.
– Brake pedal is not pressed.
– Driver's seat is not occupied.

The ignition is also switched off 30 minutes after you leave the vehicle or when you lock the vehicle from the outside.

If you want to switch the ignition on/off manually, proceed as follows:

– When the vehicle is stationary, press the START STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

WARNING

– Never switch off the drive system until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
– Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 93*. ▸

Note

– Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.
– It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.
– The output from the power unit depends on the temperature and charge level of the high-voltage battery.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Power unit start system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the motor start system. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Vehicle key: key not detected. Is there still a valid key in the vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle while the power unit was switched on. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the power unit after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Hold remote control key against marked area

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the symbol ⇨ *page 92, Fig. 79*.

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Driving the vehicle

Driving away, stopping, parking

Driving away from a standstill

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
▸ Select transmission position D or R. The parking brake will be released automatically. The drive system will be switched on.
▸ Take your foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle may start to creep forwards.
▸ Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

Securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away

Before leaving the vehicle, always secure it so that it cannot roll away.

▸ Apply the parking brake.
▸ When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

If this is not possible (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you must take additional steps to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.
▸ Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
▸ Block the wheels by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of each wheel.

Keeping the vehicle free to roll

Refer to ⇨ *page 99*.

WARNING

– Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle – even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away – risk of accident!
– Never leave your vehicle unattended while the drive system is active – risk of accident!
– If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Always take care when pressing the accelerator pedal – risk of accident!
– Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if persons or animals are left in the vehicle. They might otherwise unintentionally start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment – this could cause accidents.
– Do not leave any persons or animals in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk. ▶

– If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

CAUTION

To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the brake pedal if you have to stop. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle by keeping your foot on the accelerator. This could cause the drive system to overheat – risk of damage!

Transmission positions and driving programs

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

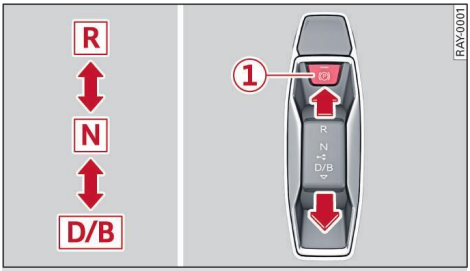


Fig. 80 Centre console: Selector lever

Transmission positions

The transmission positions are shown on the selector lever.

– **R** (Reverse): Drive backwards
– **N** (Neutral)
– **D** (Drive): Drive forwards

Selecting a transmission position

Important: The key must have been recognised.

– Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
– To select the next adjacent transmission position, move the selector lever forwards or backwards to the first point of resistance.
– To skip a transmission position (e.g. to go from D to R), move the selector lever past the point of resistance in the desired direction.
– The selected transmission position will light up on the selector lever.

Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash ⇨ *page 99, Putting the vehicle in neutral (to allow it to roll)*.

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving (at more than 2 km/h), you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

Driving program B

In transmission position D, driving program B can be selected for maximum recuperation ⇨ *page 95*.

Pull the selector lever towards the rear to switch between driving programs D and B.

WARNING

– Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed on the selector lever.
– Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 93*.
– Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the drive system switched on – risk of accident!
– Never select transmission position R when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
– The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.

Note

– You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.
– Audi recommends driving program D for everyday use.

Accelerator

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed. ▶

Maximum acceleration

A kick-down function is available for maximum power unit output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.

WARNING

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Not possible to monitor driver availability. See owner's manual

It is not possible to select a transmission position. Make sure that the driver's door is closed, the driver's seat belt is buckled and the driver's seat is occupied.

Power unit

Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over the first 3,000 km so that all moving parts can settle in together gently and the service life of the drive system components can be increased. The energy consumption may be higher than normal during this period.

Long journeys and a moderate driving style are preferable during the running-in period.

Electric drive system

Vehicles with an electric drive system are powered by an electric motor. The output from the power unit depends on the temperature and charge level of the high-voltage battery.

Recuperation

A recuperation feature allows the vehicle to recover energy. The electric motor works like a generator, converting a large proportion of the vehicle's kinetic energy into electrical energy, which is stored in the high-voltage battery. The recuperation process causes the vehicle to decelerate, much like the engine braking effect on vehicles with combustion engines. The recuperation process may be activated in transmission position D when you press the brake pedal or take your foot off the accelerator.

Because the recuperation feature is used to slow the vehicle down when you press the brake pedal, the brakes are only used in addition as necessary. This means that, by adopting a moderate driving style, it is possible to brake the vehicle almost down to a standstill using the recuperation function.

Recuperation settings

You can adjust the intensity of the recuperation braking effect when the vehicle is coasting via the **Efficiency assist** menu ⇨ *page 157*.

Automatic: The recuperation braking effect is regulated predictively, e.g. based on the layout of the road ahead. If the vehicle has a front radar sensor, the recuperation can also respond to vehicles in front. You can correct the braking effect temporarily by selecting a different recuperation level via the paddle levers*. Predictive control is resumed as soon as you press the accelerator.

Off: Predictive recuperation is switched off. You can adjust the braking effect by selecting a different recuperation level via the paddle levers*. On vehicles without paddle levers, the recuperation function does not brake the vehicle when it is coasting.

Settings via paddle levers*:

- ▸ Select ⊖ for a stronger braking effect.
- ▸ Select ⊕ for a weaker braking effect.

You can select driving program B for maximum recuperation ⇨ *page 94*.

WARNING

In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of ▶

the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!

Note

When the ESC is restricted or switched off, the automatic recuperation is unavailable and there will be no braking effect.

Range mode

Range mode switches the vehicle into a more economical mode in order to maximise the current range.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Efficiency assist** > **Range mode**.

The drive power and maximum speed are reduced. In addition, some convenience equipment may be switched off. You can exit this mode via the MMI or by pressing the Audi drive select* button or by switching off the ignition.

Vehicle sound

Electric motors are much quieter than combustion engines. To make the vehicle more audible when driving under electric power, an artificial vehicle sound is produced on models for some countries. The vehicle sound is faded out at higher speeds.

WARNING

Other road users may not hear an electric vehicle when it is moving. This applies in particular in areas with traffic calming measures, when manoeuvring or reversing – risk of accident!

Driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the drive system, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

– Select **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select*.
– Switch off any electric equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating*).
– Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
– Avoid driving at high speeds.
– Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
– Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure.
– Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
– Do not use winter tyres in summer.
– Avoid short trips.
– Brake early and evenly in order to use the recuperation function.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Drive system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The brake servo and the power steering system could stop working. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 93*. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

Drive system: warning! Vehicle can only be manoeuvred. See owner's manual

The drive power is insufficient, e.g. because the temperature of the high-voltage battery or the charge level is too low. The vehicle can only be manoeuvred at low speeds. Certain energy consumers are restricted. Charge the high-voltage battery if the charge level is low. The warning lamp will go out when the performance is restored.

If this driver message appears while the vehicle is moving in road traffic, please be aware that the vehicle may be about to stop.

Drive system: fault. Please contact workshop ▶

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The power output is limited. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: warning! Limited performance

The power output is limited. The high-voltage battery may not be sufficiently charged or may have reached a critical operating temperature, e.g. in extremely cold weather.

Vehicle sound: fault. Vehicle inaudible to pedestrians. Please contact workshop

A vehicle sound fault has occurred. Drive extremely carefully, as other road users may not be able to hear the vehicle under electric power. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Brakes

General information

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

The brake system performs system tests at regular intervals while the vehicle is stationary. Noises may occur temporarily and haptic feedback may be felt on the brake pedal.

Braking effect

To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice and snow
– Salted roads
– Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠.

Use transmission position N to do so, to prevent the recuperation function from being used for braking.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 800 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

– you apply the accelerator, or
– the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.

⚠ WARNING

– When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
– All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury!

▶

Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
– Never let the vehicle coast with the power unit switched off (this can cause accidents).
– If a braking manoeuvre is initiated by the vehicle, the brake pedal may move automatically towards the floor. Do not rest your foot underneath the brake pedal – risk of injury!

CAUTION

– Never let the brakes "drag" by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
– Please observe the important safety warnings on driving on gradients ⇨ *page 101*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan.

Note

– If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat.
– Please also observe the information on brake fluid ⇨ *page 263*.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If ABS and also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed. You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails.

Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety information ⇨ ⚠.

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving

The brake servo assistance is restricted or not available.
– If the driver message appears when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is off, this does **not** indicate a fault in the system. In this case, the full brake servo assistance will be available when the ignition is switched on. If you wish to exit the vehicle, first secure it so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 93*.
– If the driver message appears when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is on, this indicates a fault in the system. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 93*. Take your foot off the brake pedal. Switch the ignition off and then on again. If the message is still displayed or if it reappears during driving, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than usual.

Brake servo will be deactivated shortly. See owner's manual

The brake servo remains active for a short time after the ignition is switched off. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 93*.

Further indicator lamps

– The brakes have been used intensively while driving downhill for an extended period. Follow the instructions in the driver message to use the recuperation function and take the load off the brakes.

WARNING

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operation

The Ⓟ button is located in the centre console above the selector lever ⇨ *page 94, Fig. 80*.

Operating the parking brake

The electromechanical parking brake is intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

- ▸ Press the Ⓟ button. The parking brake will be applied. Or:
- ▸ When you switch off the ignition, the parking brake will be applied automatically.

When Ⓟ appears, the parking brake is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.

If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. Take additional measures to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away when parked ⇨ *page 93*.

Putting the vehicle in neutral (to allow it to roll)

To prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically (e.g. in a tunnel car wash), proceed as follows:

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. Press the brake pedal and select transmission position N.

- ▸ Confirm the message on the MMI. Or:
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Ability to roll** > **Make vehicle able to roll**.
- ▸ When you leave the vehicle, it will still be able to roll.
- ▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling away again, press the Ⓟ button or switch off the power unit with the START STOP button.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: To activate/deactivate the message display when neutral (N) is selected, select the following from the home screen: **CAR** > **Ability to roll** > **Show pop-up in position N**.

WARNING

- – Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!
- – If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Always take care when pressing the accelerator pedal – risk of accident!
- – If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to apply the parking brake (if it was released) or to release the parking brake (if it was applied). Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 93*. Seek professional assistance.

CAUTION

The parking brake must not be allowed to be applied automatically in a tunnel car wash. Make sure that the vehicle is free to roll. Do not switch off the ignition – risk of damage!

Note

- – Any noises heard when the parking brake is applied or released are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- – The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.

Hold assist

If the vehicle is regularly stationary, for example, at traffic lights, on inclines or in stop-start traffic, this system can help you to move off easily.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the driver's seat occupied, the power unit switched on, the brake pedal pressed and transmission position D or R selected.

Switching the hold assist on/off

You can switch the hold assist on/off on the MMI.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Hold assist**.

If the **Hold assist** function is greyed out or unavailable, one or more of the conditions may not have been met. ▶

Driving off with the hold assist

- With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.
- When HOLD appears, the hold assist is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

In certain situations, the hold assist may transfer the job of holding the vehicle to the parking brake.

WARNING

– The hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold assist function.
– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Switch off the hold assist function before driving the vehicle into a tunnel car wash to prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically.

Note

When the hold assist function is switched on, the system stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

Emergency braking function

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function, this has the same effect as heavy braking.

- Press and hold the Ⓟ button while the vehicle is moving.
- A warning buzzer will sound and the emergency braking procedure will be triggered.
- If you release the Ⓟ button, the emergency braking procedure will be cancelled.

WARNING

Heavy braking in corners or in bad road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control – risk of accident!

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake

If one of these two messages appears, there is a parking brake fault. If this message appears while the vehicle is stationary, check whether the parking brake can be released and reapplied. If so, switch the ignition off and on again.

If the driver message still appears, if the parking brake cannot be released or if the driver message appears while the vehicle is moving, do not continue driving. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 93*. Seek professional assistance.

Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop

Parking brake: fault. Auto P when power unit switched off. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park the vehicle on a slope and secure the vehicle before leaving it so it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 93*.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

The braking force may not be sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle at a location with a gradient that is less steep.

Parking brake is applied

The parking brake is applied. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and select a transmission position to release the parking brake. ▶

Please take over.

The vehicle can no longer be held stationary. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Special driving situations

Driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients or at high altitudes:

– Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
– Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
– When driving down steep gradients, use the recuperation braking effect by selecting driving program B ⇨ *page 94*. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
– Try not to stay on the brakes; apply them periodically.
– If necessary, use the hold assist ⇨ *page 99*.

WARNING

– Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.
– Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!

Driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

– Check the type of road surface under the water, the strength of the current and the depth of the water. The water **must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides, strong currents and waves.
– Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by oncoming traffic.
– Do not stop the car in water.
– Do not drive in reverse.
– Do not switch off the drive system.

WARNING

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.

CAUTION

Parts of the vehicle (e.g. power unit, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.

Note

Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water.

89A012720AM

Handling dynamics

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Audi drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, you can adapt the vehicle set-up to suit your personal driving style. For example, you might choose to combine a more dynamic drive set-up with more comfortable steering settings.

Selecting an Audi drive select mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The drive select button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- ▸ Press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired mode appears on the instrument cluster or centre display. Or:
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Audi drive select**.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, take your foot off the accelerator briefly after you change the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the power unit.

The following options are available, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

efficiency – trims the vehicle to a fuel-saving set-up and helps you to adopt an economical driving style. The top speed will be reduced.

comfort – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance.

auto – gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride.

dynamic – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving.

individual – allows the vehicle set-up to be adjusted to your personal preferences. Press ✎ to configure the mode ⇨ *page 102, Individual settings*.

Note

– When the ignition is switched on, certain systems (such as the drive system) are reset to a balanced setting. Select the current mode again to use its settings in full.
– Audi recommends **auto** mode for everyday use.

Individual settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

Drive system

The response of the power unit to accelerator pedal movements is more spontaneous or balanced.

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. A lighter steering response is suitable on long motorway trips or for relaxed driving on winding roads, for example.

Suspension

The suspension is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface.

Suspension

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The suspension control is an electronically controlled shock absorber system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Ground clearance

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

– Changes in temperature
– Changes in vehicle loading ▸

WARNING

Take special care that no-one can be injured if the vehicle level is changed, e.g. while the underbody or wheel arches are being washed.

CAUTION

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp – risk of damage!

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Suspension: fault. You can continue driving

A malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Steering

Description

The electromechanical steering assists you when steering the vehicle by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Progressive steering

Applies to: vehicles with progressive steering

For increased dynamic performance and vehicle handling, the steering ratio is varied depending on the steering input. The more the steering wheel is turned, the more direct the steering response. This facilitates manoeuvring and provides precise steering feedback at high speeds.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 93*. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 93*. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Seek professional assistance.

Steering: fault. You can continue driving

There is a fault in the steering system. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart the power unit, and in this case you must not continue driving.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock – risk of accident!

Note

You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp or lights up only briefly.

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle's handling characteristics. It interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering ⇨ *page 105*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior performance of the power unit in your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities – both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions – risk of accident!
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. Therefore, do not be tempted to drive too fast – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to "aquaplane" and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in motor speed, as with a front-wheel drive car. Therefore, do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Four-wheel drive: fault. Restricted stability. Please contact workshop

The vehicle's stability is restricted. You can continue driving carefully. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Electronic stabilisation control

Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer, wheelspin on the driven wheels or any danger of the vehicle tipping over.

The system stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the motor torque.

The stabilisation functions integrated in the ESC system include the following:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes.

There may be noises while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available, increasing the vehicle's stability.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down. ▶

Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.

WARNING

– The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
– Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
– When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.
– Increasing the load the vehicle is carrying – particularly its roof load – raises the vehicle's centre of gravity and therefore also increases the risk of the vehicle tipping over. Adapt your driving style to suit the conditions and avoid performing any dynamic manoeuvres – risk of accident!

Note

The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling circumference of the tyres can cause the system to reduce motor power when this is not desired.

Operation

The OFF button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The ESC is switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Restricting the ESC

In certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the stabilisation functions of the ESC so that the wheels can spin – for example, when rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it, or when driving with snow chains fitted. The ESC can also be restricted if reduced stabilisation input is desired during performance driving.

– To restrict the ESC, press the OFF button briefly. The indicator lamp will light up.
– To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

Switching off the ESC

Applies to: vehicles with ESC OFF mode

For more active control of the vehicle with no input from the ESC stabilisation functions, the ESC system can be switched off completely.

– To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps and ESC OFF will light up.
– To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out.

WARNING

– If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads. If the vehicle is carrying a heavy load and is being used for performance driving, it may not be possible to prevent it from tipping over – risk of accident!
– Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.

▶

Note

– Systems which can apply the brakes automatically may be partially or completely unavailable if the ESC is restricted, switched off or malfunctioning.
– If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. The ESC is switched on automatically if necessary and cannot be operated via the button in this case.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Further indicator lamps

If flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening. Noises may be heard while this is happening. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

High-voltage system

General information

Introduction

All work on the high-voltage system must be carried out solely by qualified high-voltage technicians and authorised workshops according to Audi's regulations.

The high-voltage system includes a high-voltage battery, power electronics, electric motor, a high-voltage air conditioner compressor, a high-voltage heater, charging system, charging socket and orange high-voltage cables.

The high-voltage battery is located in the vehicle floor and does not require any maintenance to be performed by you.

WARNING

The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. A warning sticker is attached to the different parts of the high-voltage system. This is intended to warn you of the high voltage.

- Even when the ignition is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.
- Do not touch any contacts on the vehicle charging socket, e.g. when cleaning the charging unit. If you wish to clean the charging unit, only use a dry cloth and no other tools such as a screwdriver or brush.
- Never perform work on the orange-coloured high-voltage cables or the other high-voltage components yourself. Work on the high-voltage system may only be performed by authorised workshops that have been approved for this type of work.
- The orange-coloured high-voltage cables must never be damaged, modified, removed or disconnected from the high-voltage system.
- Never use cutting, forming or sharp-edged tools or heat sources in the vicinity of high-voltage components and high-voltage cables.
- Any gases escaping from the high-voltage battery may be toxic or flammable.
- Do not expose yourself to any fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery; avoid all contact with these fluids.
- The electrolyte fluid in the high-voltage battery is corrosive. If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.
- In the event of a technical emergency, inform the service team that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery.

CAUTION

The high-voltage system can be damaged if the underside of your vehicle makes heavy contact with the ground. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle checked.

Note

The power output may be limited if the high-voltage battery is cold. The remaining range is reduced as a result and the performance may be significantly reduced for a short period after you drive off.

- To prevent this from happening, please ensure that the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged before leaving the vehicle parked at cold outside temperatures. Recharge the high-voltage battery if necessary.
- In addition, Audi recommends setting a departure time in the myAudi app, so that the high-voltage battery is heated before you start your journey.

Careful use of the high-voltage battery

Lithium-ion batteries are subject to ageing and wear over the course of their lifetime due to their physical and chemical properties. In addition to this, the ageing process of high-voltage batteries is affected by how the battery is used. Following ▶

89A012720AM

the advice below on careful use of the high-voltage battery can significantly help to maintain a high usable capacity. Please also observe the conditions of the Audi warranty related to the high-voltage battery.

Information on the charging target

– The ageing process can be accelerated and the available range reduced if the high-voltage battery is frequently charged to its maximum capacity. For everyday use, you should only charge the high-voltage battery to 80 %. To do this, set the charging target to a value of no higher than 80 % or activate the battery care function ⇨ *page 117*.
– If you charge the high-voltage battery to 100 %, drive off as soon as possible after charging. Use a timer to reduce the amount of time during which the vehicle remains stationary with a battery charge level of 100 % ⇨ *page 118*.

Information on charging capacities

Following the advice below will help you to charge the battery as efficiently as possible with the least impact on longevity.

– In public spaces, use charging stations with alternating current (AC) or direct current (DC) and a maximum capacity of 50 kW where possible. The following applies to DC charging: The lower the DC charging power in relation to the vehicle's maximum DC charging capacity, the smaller the effect on use-specific ageing of the high-voltage battery. Only charging the vehicle at the maximum DC charging capacity can result in increased use-specific ageing of the high-voltage battery.
– You should ideally use a wall box to charge in private and semi-public areas. If you use an Audi e-tron charging system, you should ideally plug it into an industrial power outlet.
– You should only charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet if an industrial AC power outlet or a public AC or DC charging station is not available.

Information on breaks between uses

The drive power may be restricted after a **break of several hours between uses** (approx. 8 hours) at ambient temperatures of below 0°C. Following the advice below can help to avoid such restrictions.

– If possible, make sure the charge level is at least 30 % when you park the vehicle, or
– Plug the vehicle into a charging station and set a timer.

The high-voltage battery may become deeply discharged if there is an **extended break between uses** (longer than 4 weeks). Irreparable damage may occur if the battery becomes deeply discharged. Following the advice below can help prevent the high-voltage battery from becoming deeply discharged during a longer break between uses.

– Break between uses without charging equipment: Before parking the vehicle, make sure the remaining battery charge is between 30 % and 80 %. The longer the vehicle is to remain stationary for, the higher the charge level of the high-voltage battery should be (max. 80 %).
– Break between uses with charging equipment constantly available: Plug the charging equipment into the vehicle and set the charging target to 50 %. Deactivate automatic unlocking of the charging connector ⇨ *page 119*. If applicable, observe the information on prices and parking times provided by the charging station operator.

CAUTION

If the vehicle is not used for an extended period, the high-voltage battery must be charged after 4 months at the latest or the vehicle must be connected permanently to the power supply (with a charging target of 50 % ⇨ *page 117*). The high-voltage battery may otherwise be damaged irreparably.

What to do in hazardous situations

General rules

Hazardous situations may occur if a driver message is shown or if you can smell smoke or gas. In the event of a hazardous situation, you should behave as follows:

– Do not inhale the fumes.
– Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area and remain in an area which is safe from all traffic (e.g. behind a roadside crash barrier).
– Inform the emergency services.
– Do not attempt to extinguish any fires yourself.
– Do not try to move the vehicle.

Driver messages

HV battery: risk of fire! Safely stop vehicle immediately and evacuate. Emergency services!

If this driver message appears, there is a risk of fire due to a severe fault in the high-voltage battery. You should behave as follows:

– Stop the vehicle without delay, paying attention to the traffic situation.
– You should use a safe place in the open, keeping a safe distance from buildings, other vehicles, overhanging roofs, carports or other structures.
– Switch the hazard warning lights on, if possible.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Switch off the ignition.
– To assist the emergency services, leave the vehicle key in a visible location in the vehicle, e.g. in the centre console.
– Get out of the vehicle immediately and make sure that no other persons or animals remain in the vehicle.
– Continue to follow the general rules ⇨ *page 109*.

The acoustic warning inside the vehicle can only be deactivated by a qualified workshop.

Protective functions in the event of a fault

In the event of a serious fault in the high-voltage battery, the vehicle may trigger additional protective functions (e.g. the horn may sound after the ignition is switched off).

WARNING

If there is a risk of fire in high-voltage battery cells, toxic gases may escape or high-voltage components may be live. Risk of severe injuries, burns or a fatal electric shock.

– Get out of the vehicle and evacuate all persons and animals.
– Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area.

Charging the high-voltage battery

Introduction

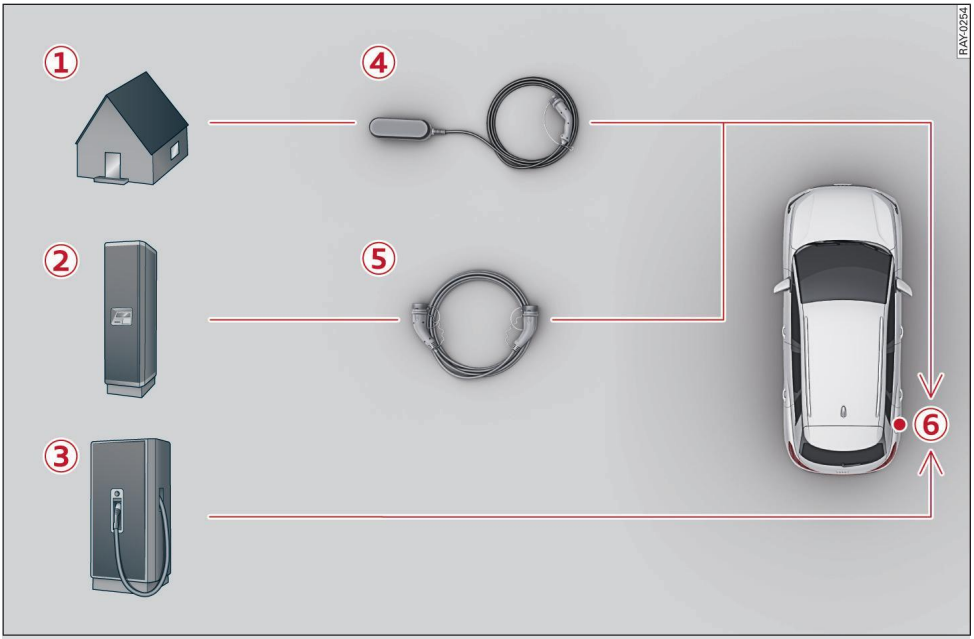


Fig. 81 Overview of charging options

The following options are available for charging the high-voltage battery:

Charging method	Charging cable	Charging socket on vehicle
① AC charging at domestic power outlets	④ Mains charging cable with domestic plug ⇨ *page 129*	⑥
① AC charging at industrial power outlets	④ Audi e-tron compact charging system ⇨ *page 123*	⑥
② Charging at a public charging station (with AC power)	⑤ Factory-supplied charging cable ⇨ *page 122* or charging cable at charging station	⑥
③ Fast charging at a public charging station (with DC power)	Charging cable at charging station	⑥

"Audi e-tron charging system" refers to either the Audi e-tron compact charging system or the mains charging cable with domestic plug. In the subsequent sections, the term "Audi charging system" is used for topics that apply to all charging systems.

For AC power supplies, Audi recommends charging the high-voltage battery at an industrial power outlet, charging station or wallbox. The efficiency will be higher and the charging time much lower compared with charging at a domestic power outlet. ▶

You should only charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet using a mains charging cable with domestic plug if an industrial AC power outlet or a public AC or DC charging station is not available.

Charging with AC power at domestic and industrial power outlets or at public charging stations

The vehicle's high-voltage battery can be charged with AC power via the charging socket ⑥.

Fast charging with DC power at public charging stations

The vehicle's high-voltage battery can be charged at a charging station with DC power via the charging socket ⑥. The time required for charging is much less than when charging with AC power. The charging cable used must not be more than 30 m long.

The maximum charging capacity and the shortest charging times are attained when the high-voltage battery is at its optimum temperature. The high-voltage battery is only preconditioned for the optimum temperature if the e-tron route planner is used. The preconditioning process can take a while, depending on the outside temperature and driving style. If not enough time is available for preconditioning, the battery may not be charged to its full capacity.

Charging time

The amount of time required to charge the vehicle can vary depending on the following:

– Type of power outlet used (domestic or industrial).
– The country's grid voltage, current rating and number of phases available.
– Domestic connection.
– Charging capacity setting on Audi charging system operating unit.
– Fluctuations in mains supply.
– Ambient temperature surrounding the vehicle.
– Temperature of high-voltage battery and Audi charging system operating unit.
– Air conditioner settings for interior temperature.
– Electrical capacity of charging connector.
– Ignition switched on/off.

Important safety notes

WARNING

Improper battery charging, (e.g. failure to observe generally applicable safety precautions, the use of unsuitable or damaged outlets and charging cables, or charging at unsuitable electrical installations) can result in short-circuits, electric shocks, explosions, fire and serious burns – risk of fatal injury!

– Do not charge the vehicle at a power outlet or electrical installation if it shows signs of damage or improper installation.
– Never use charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
– Never make modifications or repairs to electrical components and in particular to the high-voltage system.
– Never charge the vehicle in potentially explosive atmospheres. The components of the charging equipment can produce sparks and ignite flammable or explosive vapours. To reduce the risk of explosions, especially in garages, please ensure that the operating unit of the Audi e-tron charging system is at least 50 cm above the ground during charging.
– Never use an extension cable, a cable reel, a multiple outlet strip or adapter (e.g. a travel adapter or time switch) with the charging equipment.
– Do not touch the contacts on the vehicle charging socket and charging equipment.
– Do not insert any objects in the vehicle charging socket or charging equipment.
– Always protect power outlets and plug connections against water, humidity and other fluids.
– Use only the factory-supplied charging equipment provided with your vehicle or the charging cable at the charging station.

▶

89A012720AM

WARNING

Applies to: Audi charging systems

Improperly installed power sockets can result in electric shock or fire when the high-voltage battery is charged via the vehicle charging socket.

– The home power outlet for Audi charging systems must be installed and commissioned by a qualified electrician. The electrician is responsible for full compliance with existing regulations and standards.
– Make sure that the domestic power outlet is earthed and protected from water.
– If Audi charging systems do not operate as described in the operating instructions, they must not be used. Please contact a qualified workshop.
– Audi charging systems are designed for use in private and semi-public areas (e.g. on private land or company car parks). In some countries (e.g. Italy and New Zealand), mode 2 charging (which includes charging with the Audi charging system) is prohibited in public areas. In some countries and regions (e.g. Abu Dhabi, Israel, Singapore and India), it is prohibited to charge vehicles at domestic power outlets. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.
– Audi charging systems should be used in properly earthed power grids. Operation in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) is only possible using Audi charging systems with deactivated protective earth conductor monitoring ⇨ *page 124*.
– The electrical installation can be loaded to maximum capacity when the high-voltage battery is charged via the domestic/industrial power outlet. Audi recommends that the electrical installations used for charging be checked regularly by an electrician.
– Whenever possible, disconnect Audi charging systems from the charging infrastructure during thunderstorms.
– Never immerse Audi charging systems or the connectors in water.
– Only clean Audi charging systems when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the power grid and from the vehicle. Use a dry cloth for cleaning.
– Audi charging systems are suitable for use only with Audi vehicles. These charging systems are not approved for use with vehicles manufactured by other companies.

Note

– Only charging stations which meet the following standards (minimum requirement) and the standards applicable in your country can be used to charge the vehicle:
  – GB/T 18487.1 and GB/T 20234 (China)
  – IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe)
  – SAE J1772 (North America, Japan)
– If the charging station has a domestic or industrial connection, you can use your Audi charging system.

Note

Applies to: Audi charging systems

– For uninterrupted charging, Audi recommends only charging the vehicle at power outlets which are connected via a separately fused power circuit.
– Audi recommends keeping Audi charging systems in the clip wall mount* during operation. If this is not possible, always place Audi charging systems on a firm, stable surface when charging ⇨ ⚠.
– To prevent overheating during use, do not expose Audi charging systems to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the operating unit overheats, the charging cycle is automatically interrupted until the temperature drops again to within the normal range.

Charging infrastructure labelling[1)]

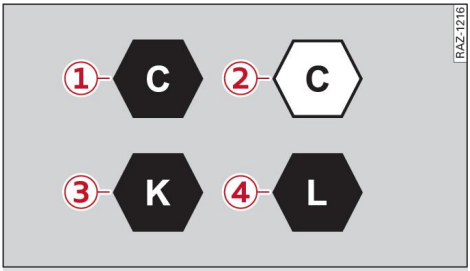


Fig. 82 Labels used on charging infrastructure

	Meaning
①	Vehicle: label for alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector
②	Charging station: label for alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector
③	Vehicle: label for direct current (DC) and CCS connector with a voltage of 50 V to 500 V
④	Vehicle: label for direct current (DC) and CCS connector with a voltage of 200 V to 920 V

Please observe the safety notes and warnings ⇨ *page 111*.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure

The DIN EN 17186 labels indicate whether the local power supply is suitable for the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. They can be found on the vehicle's charging socket, on the components of the local charging infrastructure (charging station, mains socket) and on the charging cable. The labels are designed to help you find the appropriate charging station for your vehicle. They refer to standardised charging systems that conform to the DIN EN 62196 standard.

⚠ WARNING

Charging at electrical installations that have not been checked can cause damage and serious injury.

– If there is no label or if you are unfamiliar with the charging infrastructure, contact an electrician before using the infrastructure.

Charging

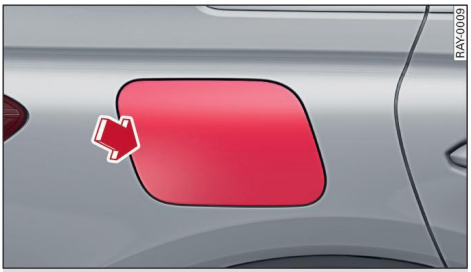


Fig. 83 Rear right side of vehicle: Opening high-voltage charging flap

Fig. 84 Charging unit: Charging socket and charging indicator

Connecting the charging cable

The sequence of the following steps may vary when you charge your vehicle at a charging station. Follow the instructions and operating tips provided by the charging station manufacturer.

Important: The drive system must be deactivated and the parking brake must be applied.

– Set the desired charging mode so that the vehicle is charged immediately or at a later time ⇨ *page 117*.
– Select your preferred setting for the automatic release function for the charging connector (charging connector can be unplugged only by unlocking the vehicle or without unlocking) ⇨ *page 119*. ▶

[1)] May vary in different countries.

– Take the charging cable out of the vehicle if necessary ⇨ *page 122, Transport*.
– Remove the protective caps on the charging cable if necessary.
– Connect the charging cable to the power supply first or take it out of the charging station.
– Unwind the charging cable completely.
– Unlock the vehicle.
– Press the left side of the charging flap to open it ⇨ *Fig. 83*.
– If you wish to fast-charge the vehicle at a public charging station with DC power, take off the cap on the charging socket ②.
– Plug the charging connector into the vehicle charging socket and push it in for 5 seconds to secure it in the charging socket.
– Check whether the charging mode ① shown is the one you wish to use for the charging cycle ⇨ *page 115*.

While the vehicle is being charged

The charging indicator on the charging unit ① pulsates in green during the charging cycle. pulsates in the instrument cluster. A sticker on the charging unit ③ describes the various indicators ⇨ *page 115*.

The charging connector is locked during charging and cannot be removed.

Depending on which view is selected ⇨ *page 15*, the following information on the charging cycle is displayed in the instrument cluster.

– : Range
– : Time remaining until the end of the charging cycle
– : Current battery level
– : Date and time of completed charging cycle
– : Charging speed (additional range per hour)
– : Charging capacity (depends on the power source selected)

To call up the information after charging is over, select the following on the instrument cluster: Vehicle functions tab > button > **Charging**.

Ending the charging cycle

You can interrupt and terminate the charging cycle at any time.

Applies to: DC charging cycle

– When the selected charging target is reached, the charging cycle ends automatically and the charging connector is released permanently.
– To terminate a charging cycle which is still active, follow the instructions on the charging station, or
– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging** > . The coloured bar in the button will go out.
– Unplug the charging connector and close the charging flap.

Applies to: AC charging cycle

– Unlock the vehicle.
– Unplug the charging connector. If the charging connector is not unplugged within 30 seconds, it will be locked again automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed if appropriate.
– Close the charging flap.
– Disconnect the charging cable from the power supply if necessary or secure it to the charging station again.
– Put available protective caps back onto the charging cable.
– If you are transporting the charging cable in the vehicle, stow it safely ⇨ *page 122*.

If it is not possible to disconnect the charging connector from the vehicle, you will need to release it manually ⇨ *page 116*.

If it is not possible to unplug the charging connector from the charging station, please authenticate yourself at the charging station again and attempt to unplug the connector. If it is still not possible to unplug the charging connector from the charging station, please contact the operator of the charging station.

WARNING

– Do not unplug the charging cable from the charging socket or the vehicle charging socket while the vehicle is being charged. Terminate the charging cycle before you unplug the charging cable from the socket – risk of damage to the connector contacts due to spark generation.

– If the charging unit is damaged, you must not use it to charge the vehicle – risk of injury!
– If the charging unit is damaged, or if the charging flap cannot be closed or is missing, drive immediately to a workshop and have this rectified – risk of injury!

CAUTION

The charging flap and the electronic components behind it can be damaged if you drive with the charging unit open. Before you start a journey, please check that the charging flap is properly closed.

Note

– If you hear a noise when plugging in the charging connector, this may be because the parking brake is being applied.
– Use a small brush and a solvent-free de-icer spray to remove ice and snow from the charging unit.
– There may be some interference in the vehicle's onboard systems, e.g. radio reception, while the vehicle is being charged.

Charging indicator

An LED on the charging unit ① ⇨ *page 113, Fig. 84* indicates the charging status. A sticker on the charging unit ③ ⇨ *page 113, Fig. 84* describes the various indicators. The LED indicator logic is described in the following table.

LED on charging unit		Meaning
off		Vehicle charging system in standby mode.
		Charging cycle has been interrupted.
white	pulsating/flashing	Connection between power source and vehicle is being established.
green	pulsating	The high-voltage battery is being charged.
	pulsating and flashing rapidly in red	Emergency charging active. The high-voltage battery is being charged with reduced power. It is possible that the charging connector may not have been locked or that there is a communication issue with the charging equipment.
	flashing	Timer is active but charging has not yet started.
	lit	High-voltage battery charge cycle finished.
red	lit	Charging connector may not be properly locked in vehicle charging socket. Check that the charging connector is plugged in correctly. Unplug the charging connector, plug it into the charging socket again and press it gently upwards for 5 seconds. Alternatively, try using a different charging station. If the LED remains lit, there is a malfunction in the vehicle charging system or power source. Seek professional assistance if necessary.
		The outside temperature is too low or too high.

Note

The operating status of the LED is also shown in the instrument cluster display .

Manual release

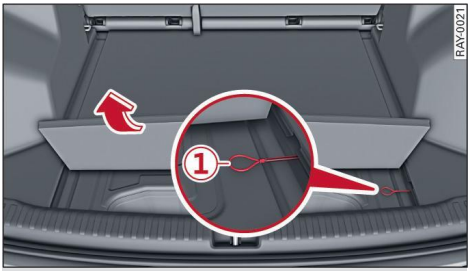


Fig. 85 Luggage compartment, right side: Manual release for charging connector

Having the charging flap released manually

- If you cannot open the charging flap, seek professional assistance.
- Then drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Releasing the charging connector manually

If you cannot remove the charging connector from the vehicle charging socket, a fault may have occurred. The vehicle charging connector will have to be released manually.

In some cases it may be sufficient to release the charging connector electrically.

Important: The parking brake must be applied and the vehicle must be unlocked.

- Finish the charging cycle ⇨ *page 114, Ending the charging cycle*.
- To trigger the electrical release, unlock the vehicle three times in quick succession using the vehicle key and then try to unplug the charging connector immediately. If the charging connector remains locked, you will have to release it manually.
- Open the boot lid.
- Lift the floor panel and carefully pull the yellow ring ① ⇨ ⓘ.
- Unplug the charging connector.
- Fit the floor panel again and close the boot lid.
- Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

If the charging connector cannot be removed after the manual release procedure, there is still a malfunction. At temperatures below freezing, the charging connector may be frozen. In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

CAUTION

Stop pulling the ring when you feel resistance (the release mechanism is not audible). Otherwise, you could damage the manual release mechanism.

Driver messages

If the indicator lamp lights up, the range is very low. Charge the high-voltage battery.

Charging system: fault. Only AC charging possible. Please contact workshop

Charging system: fault. Only DC charging possible. Please contact workshop

This message appears if there is a fault in the charging system. Drive to a qualified workshop.

Charging system: fault. AC charging restricted. Please contact workshop

If this driver message appears, the vehicle is being charged with reduced power as an emergency measure. Drive to a qualified workshop after the charging cycle.

Charging system: fault. Error in charging infrastructure. See owner's manual

This driver message appears, for example, if the time limit for starting the charging cycle has been exceeded or the charging station/system is incompatible. Unplug the charging connector and plug it into the vehicle's charging socket again and authenticate yourself at the charging station. If the message persists, change to a different charging station or use the Audi charging system to charge the vehicle.

Charging system: fault. Charging aborted. See owner's manual

This driver message appears if a fault is detected in the charging infrastructure on the vehicle or charging station and it was not possible to fully charge the battery, e.g. due to overheating of the vehicle charging socket. Use a different charging ▶

station. If the message persists, you should drive to a qualified workshop.

Connector locking system: fault. See owner's manual

This message appears if the charging connector was not locked correctly in the charging socket. Unplug the charging connector, plug it into the charging socket again and press it gently upwards for 5 seconds. Alternatively, try using a different charging station. If the driver message appears after the charging cycle has been completed, the charging connector will have to be released manually ⇨ *page 116*. If the message persists after carrying out remedial measures, please seek professional assistance.

Charging settings

Charging menu

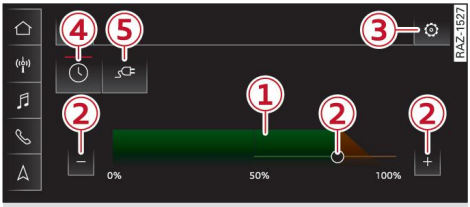


Fig. 86 Centre display: Charging settings

You can select individual settings related to the charging process depending on the vehicle's equipment.

– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging**.
– If necessary, scroll to the display ⇨ *Fig. 86*.

① Display showing current charging target/ battery charge level
② Set a charging target
③ Open further settings
④ Switch timer charging mode on/off
⑤ Stop charging procedure

Charging mode

In **immediate charging mode**, the charging cycle begins immediately when the charging connector is plugged in and when the charging station is activated (if applicable). In **timer charging mode**, the charging cycle begins with a time delay based on a previously configured and activated timer ⇨ *page 118* or on a preferred charging time ⇨ *page 120*.

– Press the button ④ to switch the timer charging mode on. A coloured bar will light up in the button.

Charging target

Introduction

The charging target defines the maximum level to which the high-voltage battery is to be charged. The charging target can be specified manually or automatically via the battery care function.

Audi recommends adjusting the charging target depending on how the vehicle is used. For everyday use: Setting the charging target to 80 % can help maximise the service life of the high-voltage battery. Before embarking on a long journey: Setting the charging target to 100 % can help achieve the highest possible range. You should set off as soon as possible after charging the high-voltage battery to 100 %. If necessary, use timer charging mode.

Activating the battery care function

The battery care function can prevent unwanted charge levels of over 80% by automatically setting the charging target to approx. 80 %.

▸ To activate the battery care function, select the following from the home screen: **Car** > **Charging** > ⚙ > **Battery care function**.

Applies to immediate charging mode: If you set the charging target to less than 80 % manually while the battery care function is activated, this setting will be applied permanently. If you set the charging target to over 80 % manually while the battery care function is activated, this setting will be applied once. Once the charging cycle has been successfully completed, the charging target of the battery care function is reactivated. The battery care function remains activated at an address for which you have defined advanced charging settings ⇨ *page 120,* **Advanced charging settings**. ▶

Apples to timer charging mode: The battery care function is not accounted for if you charge using a timer.

Setting the charging target manually

The charging target can be set while the battery care function is activated or deactivated. When the battery care function is activated, a manual charging target of over 80 % is applied only once for the impending charging cycle. When the battery care function is deactivated, the charging target setting is applied for every charging cycle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging**.
- If the timers are displayed, swipe your finger across the display to the right.
- Set the desired charging target.

If the battery care function is deactivated, the manual charging target setting will be saved and applied at all locations for which you have not defined specific charging settings. If the vehicle is at an address for which you have already defined advanced charging settings, the charging target will also be changed in the advanced charging settings ⇨ *page 120,* **Advanced charging settings**.

Note

If you set a charging target which is lower than the current battery level when charging the vehicle, the charging cycle will be cancelled. The charging cycle will be resumed when you set a charging target which is higher than the current battery level. This is not the case if you are using a charging station at which you have authenticated yourself manually. In this case you will need to authenticate yourself at the charging station again.

Timers

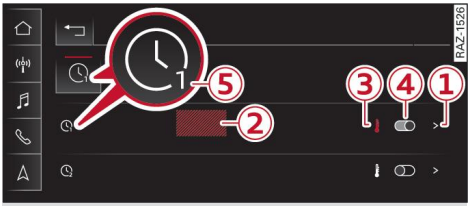


Fig. 87 Centre display: Timers

Available settings

You can specify the time by which you wish your vehicle to reach the desired charging target at the latest. Once a timer is switched on, it is triggered regularly at the times set.

With a timer, you can adjust the following settings:

- Charging target (battery charge level at departure time; also refer to ⇨ *page 117*).
- Air conditioning at departure time.

Configuring and switching on the timer

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging**.
- If necessary, scroll to the timer display ⇨ *Fig. 87*.
- To configure a timer, select **>** ① in the line for the desired timer.
- Choose one or more days of the week on which the timer should be triggered regularly and select **Next**.
- Set the desired departure time and select **OK**.
- To activate the air conditioning additionally, select ③. When the timer is activated, the air conditioning is also triggered if no charging connector is plugged in. If you plan to leave the car standing for long periods, Audi recommends deactivating active timers to prevent the high-voltage battery being discharged.
- To switch on a timer, select ④.
- To activate timers you have switched on for the next charging cycle, select timer charging mode ⇨ *page 117*. When timer charging mode is activated, a coloured bar will light up in the button.

Several timers can be switched on simultaneously. A corresponding number (5) shows which timer is currently active.

If the departure time set on the timer (2) is too soon, it may not be possible to reach the desired charging target.

Note

– When automatic release of the charging connector is activated, the following applies: If the vehicle is not being charged, the charging connector is released and can be unplugged, e.g. when waiting for a timer or a charging window.
– On some charging stations it is not possible to use the charging timer.

Automatic release of charging connector

Applies to: vehicles with automatic charging connector release

You can activate a setting to automatically release the charging connector after charging is completed. This allows you or someone else to unplug the charging connector even when the vehicle is locked. This function is useful to avoid blocking a charging station for longer than necessary or to allow the charging connector to be unplugged in a private area without needing the vehicle key.

The automatic release of the charging connector is permanently activated for DC charging cycles.

▸ Applies to MMI: To activate/deactivate the automatic release setting for AC charging, select the following from the home screen: **CAR** > **Charging** > ⚙ > **AC connector: release after charging**.
▸ Before each charging cycle, you should check whether the current setting is the one desired for the current charging cycle.

CAUTION

The function should only be activated when the charging cable is part of the charging station. If you use your own charging cable, it will not be protected against theft.

Plug & Charge

Applies to: vehicles with Plug & Charge

With Plug & Charge, the contract details of your charging contract are stored in the vehicle. Your vehicle can then log in automatically at public HPC, DC and AC charging stations as soon as it is connected to the charging station via a charging cable. You do not need to log in manually and you do not need a card or an app to pay. Plug & Charge can only be used at compatible charging stations.

Setting up

Important: You must have an active charging contract that supports Plug & Charge.

– Set up the Plug & Charge function via the myAudi app.

Switching on/off

Plug & Charge can only be switched on by the key user. As soon as Plug & Charge has been switched on, all users are authorised to charge the vehicle via Plug & Charge. It is not possible to authorise individual users for Plug & Charge. Any user can switch Plug & Charge off, e.g. for an impending charging cycle. Only the key user can switch it back on.

Important: You must have set up Plug & Charge, your myAudi user ID must be registered as the key user in the vehicle ⇨ *page 32* and you must be logged in with that user ID.

– Applies to MMI: To switch Plug & Charge on/off, select the following from the home screen: **CAR** > **Charging** > ⚙ > **Plug & Charge**.

Charging and payment

– Choose a charging station that is compatible with Plug & Charge. In the myAudi app, you will find information on Plug & Charge compatibility under the payment options for a charging station.
– Connect your vehicle to the charging station ⇨ *page 113, Connecting the charging cable*.
– Check that the vehicle has logged into the charging station successfully. The charging cycle starts automatically. ▶

– Unplug the charging connector once charging is completed ⇨ *page 114*. Payment is made automatically via the charging contract linked to the vehicle.

Deleting contract details from the vehicle

If the key user is still logged into the vehicle after the charging contract expires, the contract details will be automatically deleted from the vehicle.

Unauthorised persons may be able to use the function at your expense if, for example, you still have a valid charging contract when you sell the vehicle. To prevent this, you must delete the contract details from the vehicle:

– Reset the vehicle to the factory settings.

Troubleshooting

If you cannot switch the function on and/or you cannot conclude a charging contract, restore the vehicle to the factory settings and try again 24 hours later.

Driver messages

Plug & Charge authentication not possible

This driver message appears if it is not possible to authenticate and pay via Plug & Charge. To start charging anyway, select a different payment method on the charging station. If the charging cycle still does not start, switch Plug & Charge off and start the charging cycle again.

Advanced charging settings

Available settings

In the advanced charging settings, you can define addresses (locations) at which specific charging settings are to apply. These are applied as long as your vehicle is in the vicinity of a specified address. The charging target that has been set will be used in immediate charging mode as well as in timer charging mode.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can adjust the following settings:

- Charging target (battery charge level at departure time; also refer to ⇨ *page 117*).
- Minimum charge level (e.g. to enable a specific range in the event of an early departure).
- Preferred charging time (e.g. to use a cost-effective electricity tariff).

Managing advanced charging settings

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging** > ⚙ > **Advanced charging settings**.
- To define new settings for a particular address, select +. Follow the directions given on the display.
- To change the existing settings for a particular address, press the appropriate button.
- To delete the existing settings for a particular address, select ✎.

Preferred charging time

If you activate this function, the vehicle is only charged within a charging window defined by you. If the charging window is too short, the specified charging target may not be reached. To ensure that a particular charging target is reached by your departure time, you also need to activate a timer.

A preferred charging time is only applied if you switch on timer charging mode prior to the impending charging cycle ⇨ *page 117*.

Note

When automatic release of the charging connector is activated, the following applies: If the vehicle is not being charged, the charging connector is released and can be unplugged, e.g. when waiting for a timer or a charging window.

Charging equipment

Introduction

The following charging cables may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power
– Audi e-tron compact charging system
– Mains charging cable with domestic plug ▶

Notes on using the charging equipment

Please note the following information for safe handling of the charging equipment:

– Protect the equipment so that it cannot be run over, dropped, pulled, bent or crushed.
– Do not immerse the charging equipment in water; keep it protected against snow or ice.
– When you unplug the charging cable from the vehicle and from the power supply, pull only the connectors, not the cable.
– Put the protective caps back on after using the charging cable.
– Use the Audi charging system only in an electricity grid with a mains frequency of 50 Hz/ 60 Hz.
– Use and store the Audi charging system only when the relative humidity is between 5 % and 95 % (non-condensing).
– The Audi charging system is protected against dust and water jets (IP55).

The warnings attached to the charging equipment may vary in different countries:

Symbol	Meaning
	Use and store the Audi charging system at temperatures between -30 °C and +50 °C.
	Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 4000 m above mean sea level.
	Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 5000 m above mean sea level.
	The Audi charging system is equipped with an unswitched protective earth conductor.
	The Audi charging system is equipped with a switched protective earth conductor.
	Do not use the Audi charging system in unearthed power networks (e.g. IT networks). Use the Audi charging system only in earthed power grids.

Symbol	Meaning
	Surfaces can become very hot if exposed to direct sunlight.
	Improper use may result in electric shocks.
	Please refer to the associated operating instructions and read the safety instructions.
	Please follow the waste disposal rules.
	Do not use extension cables or cable reels.
	Do not use travel adapters.
	Do not use multiple outlet power sockets.
	Do not use charging cables if the connector leads or electronics have been damaged.

Purpose of use for Audi charging systems

Charging device for charging mode 2 for charging Audi vehicles with a high-voltage battery which comply with the generally applicable standards and regulations for electric vehicles.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 306, Information on waste disposal*.

Transport

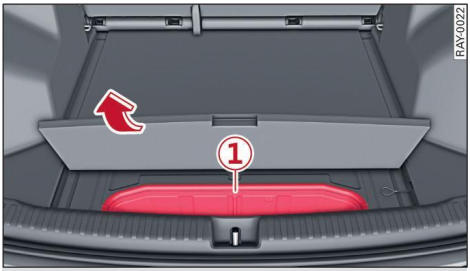


Fig. 88 Luggage compartment: Transport area

Always stow the charging equipment safely in the luggage compartment prior to transport.

- ▸ Open the boot lid ⇨ *page 40*.
- ▸ Lift the floor panel and stow the charging equipment in the transport area (1).

If charging equipment is carried outside the transport area, it must be properly secured in the luggage compartment, e.g. with a stretch net.

WARNING

Unsecured, improperly secured or incorrectly positioned vehicle charging equipment can become dislodged and injure the vehicle occupants during braking or turning manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

– The charging equipment should be stowed in the transport area in the luggage compartment or, if stowed elsewhere in the luggage compartment, should be secured with a stretch net or similar.
– The charging equipment must NOT be transported in the passenger compartment.

CAUTION

Always lift or carry the Audi charging system as a unit and never by the cables.

Charging cable (mode 3) for public charging stations with AC power

Applies to: vehicles with charging cable for public charging stations with AC power

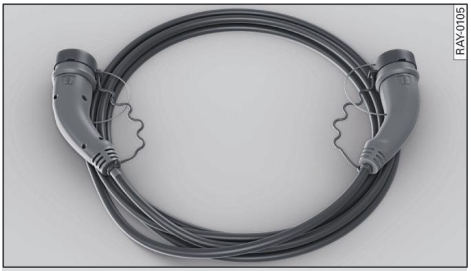


Fig. 89 Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power (example)

You can use this charging cable to charge your vehicle at public charging stations with AC power if they do not have an integrated charging cable. Please note the procedure for charging ⇨ *page 113*.

CAUTION

Do not use the charging cable as an extension cable for the Audi charging system. This will cause a charging cycle malfunction.

Note

– Charging with the charging cable may not be possible at charging stations which have a higher current rating than the cable rating. Please note the information and notices at the charging station.
– Many of the electrical installations in Norway are designed based on different technical rules than those commonly used in Europe. You must only use a charging cable with a cross-section of 5 x 6 mm². Please note the specifications on the charging cable. Before embarking on a trip to Norway, check whether the charging cable on your vehicle is suitable for these types of charging station.

Audi e-tron compact charging system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi e-tron compact charging system

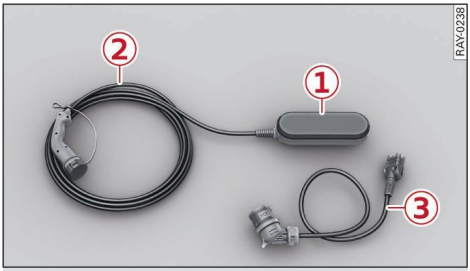


Fig. 90 Audi e-tron compact charging system: Components (example)

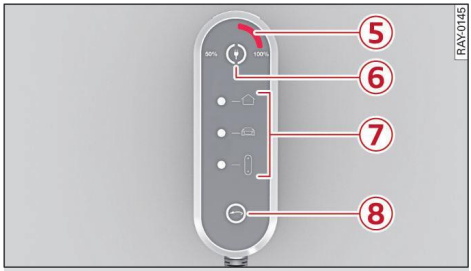


Fig. 91 Audi e-tron compact charging system: Operating unit

Please refer to the safety information ⇨*page 111, Important safety notes*.

You can use the Audi e-tron compact charging system to charge the vehicle at an industrial power outlet. The following accessories may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

① Operating unit

② Vehicle cable with vehicle charging connector

③ Mains cable with mains plug for industrial power outlets

The vehicle cable is permanently connected to the operating unit. The mains cable is plugged into the top end of the operating unit and can be changed ⇨*page 132*.

Overview of operating unit

⑤[a]	Safety warning: Only set the charging capacity to 100 % if the charging infrastructure has been checked by a qualified electrician; otherwise the charging infrastructure may be damaged e.g. by scorching ⇨*page 111, Important safety notes*.
⑥	ON/OFF button, charging capacity and LED
⑦	Status LED:
	Power grid/domestic connection
	Vehicle
	Control console
⑧	Reset

[a] Depending on country

Charging

Please note the correct procedure for charging ⇨*page 113*.

Important: The correct mains plug must be fitted ⇨*page 132*.

– Connect the mains plug to the power outlet.
– Plug the vehicle charging connector into the vehicle charging socket.
– The charging cycle starts automatically.
– After the charging cycle, unlock the vehicle and unplug the vehicle charging connector from the vehicle charging socket.

Limiting the charging capacity

You can limit the charging capacity and therefore also the charging current used. You can specify whether you want to charge at reduced (50 %) or full (100 %) capacity. Full charging capacity (100 %) achieves the shortest charging time; it should only be selected if the electrical installation has been checked by a qualified electrician. Reduced charging capacity (50 %) can reduce the load on the electrical installation and prevent it from overheating or becoming overloaded, for ▶

example if several items of electrical equipment are connected to the same circuit.

Depending on the charging system, note the following characteristics with regard to limiting the charging capacity:

– Applies to charging system with 3.6 kW, 7.2 kW or 11 kW: When using an industrial power outlet, the most recent setting is always called up.
– Applies to charging system with 9.6 kW: When using an industrial power outlet, the charging capacity limitation is reset to 50 % when there is no longer any mains supply to the charging system (e.g. due to the mains plug being unplugged).

Before each charging cycle, you should check whether the last charging capacity setting is desired for the current charging cycle.

– To adjust the charging capacity limitation, press the button (6) ⇨ *Fig. 91* for at least two seconds.

The status LEDs, and will flash once in green when the charging capacity limitation has been successfully adjusted. The setting (50 % or 100 %) will be displayed on the left or right of the button.

Activating/deactivating protective earth (PE) conductor monitoring

Please read the safety information on PE conductor monitoring ⇨ ⚠.

If the PE conductor monitoring has interrupted the charging cycle and the LED on the operating unit (6) ⇨ *Fig. 91* and the two status LEDs and are lit in red, you should deactivate PE conductor monitoring as follows:

– To deactivate PE conductor monitoring, press buttons (6) and (8) ⇨ *Fig. 91* simultaneously for six seconds. The status LED will flash in white while you are doing so. Release the buttons again for one second.
– Press both buttons and again for six seconds. Deactivation will take place automatically after a brief interval. The LED on the operating unit (6) will pulsate in green and the two status LEDs and will light up in yellow.
– To activate PE conductor monitoring, press and hold buttons and until the status LEDs and go out. The reset will occur automatically after a brief interval.

Status and fault indicators on the operating unit

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Lit in green Off Off Off Off	The charging unit is ready to charge but not yet charging.	Start the charging cycle ⇨ *page 113*.
Pulsating in green Off Off Off Off	The vehicle is being charged with PE conductor monitoring activated.	

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Pulsating in green Lit in yellow Off Off Off	The mains plug has overheated. Possible cause: the multi-phase socket has been connected to a single-phase system. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the mains plug has cooled down. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power until the connector has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Pulsating in green Lit in yellow Lit in yellow Off Off	The vehicle is being charged with PE conductor monitoring deactivated.	For unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) only: No remedial measures required, the vehicle will be charged in the correct way for the power grid. For earthed networks only: Activate PE conductor monitoring ⇨ *page 124*.
Pulsating in green Off Off Lit in yellow Off	The operating unit has overheated. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power until the operating unit has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in yellow Off Off Off Off	The charger is connected to the vehicle. The high-voltage battery is charged and the charging cycle was completed successfully, or the vehicle does not need to be charged.	
Lit in red Lit in yellow Off Off Off	The mains plug has overheated. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the mains plug has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Off Off Lit in yellow Off	The operating unit has overheated. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.

▶

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Lit in red Flashing in yellow Off Off Off	The charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection is restricted. Possible cause: low voltage or poor mains frequency. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the power grid/domestic connection has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Off Flashing in yellow Off Off	A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the vehicle charging system has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Off Off Flashing in yellow Off	The mains or vehicle cable is defective. Possible cause: mismatch in coding resistance of mains or vehicle cable. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the mains or vehicle cable replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Off Lit in red Off Off	A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Stop the vehicle charging cycle and remove the vehicle cable from the vehicle charging socket. Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. Restart the charging cycle ⇨ *page 113*. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Flashing in red Off Off Off	There has been a voltage surge in the charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Off Off Lit in red Off	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Off Off Flashing in red Off	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit (self-test failed). The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Off Off	The charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection is inadequate: the protective earth conductor is disconnected or not installed. The PE conductor monitoring system has interrupted the charging cycle.	For unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) only: If necessary, charge the vehicle with protective earth conductor monitoring deactivated ⇨ *page 124*. For earthed networks only: Have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. Do not use the power grid/domestic connection until the fault has been rectified.
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Off	The indicator lamp on the reset button is defective. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Flashing in red	The operating unit has detected a fault in the electric current. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Press the ⊖ button for at least 2 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Flashing in red Flashing in red Flashing in red Off	The charging infrastructure is wired incorrectly. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains. Have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. Possible cause: Software error or load relay circuit error. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Flashing in red Off Off Lit in red Off	A serious fault has occurred in the operating unit. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Off	The indicator lamp in the on/off button of the operating unit is defective. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red		
Lit in red		
Lit in red		
Lit in red		

Technical data

The power output of the charging system may differ from the charging capacity of your vehicle. Specific factors such as fluctuations in the mains voltage may also reduce the power output of the charging system ⇨ *page 111*.

You can find the part number on the label on the rear of the operating unit.

	Part number
	8V4.971.675.AS
Max. power output	11 kW
Rated current	16 A 3-phase
Rated voltage	100 V – 240 V / 400 V
Mains frequency	50 Hz/60 Hz
Overvoltage category (IEC 60664)	II
Rated short-time withstand current (EN 61439-1)	<10 kA eff.
Mains plug types	CEE 400 V/16 A, 3p; CEE 400 V/32 A, 3p;
Integrated residual current device	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA
Vehicle charging connector	Type 2
Protection class	I

	Part number
	8V4.971.675.AS
IP degree of protection	55
Weight of operating unit	2.4 – 3.5 kg
Dimensions of operating unit (height x width x depth)	310 mm x 105 mm x 72 mm

WARNING

The use of the Audi e-tron compact charging system without PE conductor monitoring activated can cause short-circuits, electric shocks, explosions and fires or burns. The Audi e-tron compact charging system should be used in earthed power grids. Deactivate PE conductor monitoring only in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks). Activate PE conductor monitoring in earthed power networks.

Note

When the power supply is connected or restored, the operating unit performs a self-test routine. All the LEDs will light up in green for two seconds if the self-test routine is successful.

Mains charging cable with domestic plug

Applies to: vehicles with mains charging cable with domestic plug

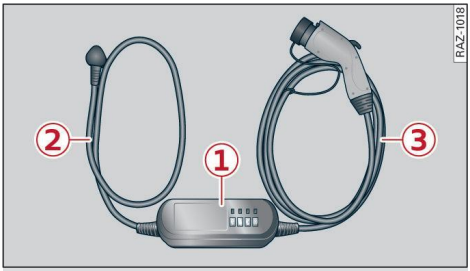


Fig. 92 Mains charging cable: components

Fig. 93 Mains charging cable: status indicator (example)

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 111, Important safety notes*.

You can use the mains charging cable with domestic plug to charge your vehicle at a domestic power outlet. The system consists of the following components:

① Safety device with status indicator
② Mains cable with mains plug for domestic power outlets
③ Vehicle cable with vehicle charging connector

The safety device ① is permanently connected to the vehicle cable and the mains cable. The cables cannot be changed.

Status indicators

④ Power supply indicator[1] (green LED)
⑤ Safety device indicator (green LED)
⑥ Vehicle indicator (green LED)
⑦ Fault indicator (red LED)

Safety device

There is a safety device with a status and fault indicator on the mains charging cable ⇨ *Fig. 93*. The electronic safety device ensures that no electrical power is supplied to the vehicle charging connector until it is connected to the vehicle charging socket.

Temperature monitoring

The mains charging cable is fitted with a temperature monitoring function at the safety device and at the mains plug. The temperature monitoring function is triggered in the following situations:

– If extreme heat is generated by the charging process.
– If extreme heat is generated by external factors, e.g. strong sunlight.

When the temperature monitoring function is triggered, the charging process continues with reduced current or is cancelled ⇨ *table on page 130*.

Limiting the charging current

The mains charging cable limits the charging current in accordance with the power supply which is used. Depending on the domestic power outlets for specific countries, the maximum charging current may be 6 A, 8 A or 10 A.

Overview of statuses and faults

When the mains charging cable is connected to the domestic power outlet, the safety device automatically performs a self-test in which all status indicators light up briefly and go out one after the other. The current operating status is then displayed.

In the following table, the status of an LED is shown as follows:

● = illuminated
○ = off
☀ = flashing

[1] Not available in all countries

Description of status/fault	Status indicator				Possible remedy
	④ [a]	⑤	⑥	⑦	
The charging system is without power.	○	○	○	○	
The mains plug is connected to the domestic power outlet but the vehicle connector is not connected to the vehicle.	●	○	○	○	
The vehicle is being charged.	●	●	☀	○	
The vehicle is fully charged.	●	●	●	○	
The temperature monitoring function has been triggered; the vehicle is still being charging but with reduced current.	●	○	○	☀	The charging current will be increased again as soon as the mains charging cable has cooled down sufficiently.
	●	●	☀	☀	
	●	●	●	☀	
The temperature monitoring function has been triggered; the charging process has been cancelled.	☀	○	○	☀	Unplug the mains and vehicle cables, allow them to cool down and then plug them back in. If the fault occurs again, you should have it checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
	○	☀	○	☀	
A fault has occurred in the power supply.	☀	○	○	●	Have the fault checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
A fault has occurred in the safety device.	○	☀	○	●	Have the fault checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
				☀	
A fault has occurred in the vehicle.	○	○	☀	●	Have the fault checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
				☀	
Charging may not be possible if the mains voltage is too low or too high. Unstable mains voltage during charging may cause the charging procedure to be interrupted.					The fault will be cleared automatically as soon as the mains supply is stable again.

[a] Not available in all countries

Technical data

The power output of the charging system may differ from the charging capacity of your vehicle. Specific factors such as fluctuations in the mains voltage may also reduce the power output of the charging system ⇨ *page 111*.

The technical data of the charging system depend on the part number. You can find the part number on the label on the rear of the operating unit. ▶

	Part number			
	1EA.971.675.R 1EA.971.675.AL 1EA.971.675.BF 1EA.971.675.AP	**1EA.971.675.T 1EA.971.675.BG 1EA.971.675.BH 1EA.971.675.AS**	**1EA.971.675.AK 1EA.971.675.AM 1EA.971.675.AT**	**1EA.971.675.S**
Max. power output	2.2 kW 1EA.971.675.R	1.8 kW	1.2 KW 1EA.971.675.AK	3.4 kW
	2.3 kW 1EA.971.675.AL 1EA.971.675.BF 1EA.971.675.AP		1.3 kW 1EA.971.675.AM	
			2.9 kW 1EA.971.675.AT	
Rated current	10 A 1-phase	8A 1-phase	10A 1-phase: 1EA.971.675.AK	15A 1-phase
			6A 1-phase: 1EA.971.675.AM	
			13A 1-phase: 1EA.971.675.AT	
Rated voltage	220V 1EA.971.675.R	230V	120V 1EA.971.675.AK	230V
	230V 1EA.971.675.AL 1EA.971.675.BF 1EA.971.675.AP		230V 1EA.971.675.AM 1EA.971.675.AT	
Mains frequency	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz
Mains plug types	Type E/F 1EA.971.675.R 1EA.971.675.AL 1EA.971.675.AP	Type I: 1EA.971.675.T	NEMA 5-15 1EA.971.675.AK	YP-41
	Type G 1EA.971.675.BF		Type K 1EA.971.675.AM	
		Type J 1EA.971.675.BG	CEE 1-phase: 16A 1EA.971.675.AT	
		Type E/F: 1EA.971.675.BH		
		Type L 1EA.971.675.AS		
Integrated residual current device	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA			
Vehicle charging connector	Type 1 1EA.971.675.R	Type 2	Type 1 1EA.971.675.AK	Type 1
	Type 2 1EA.971.675.AL 1EA.971.675.BF 1EA.971.675.AP		Type 2 1EA.971.675.AM 1EA.971.675.AT	

89A012720AM

	Part number			
	1EA.971.675.R 1EA.971.675.AL 1EA.971.675.BF 1EA.971.675.AP	1EA.971.675.T 1EA.971.675.BG 1EA.971.675.BH 1EA.971.675.AS	1EA.971.675.AK 1EA.971.675.AM 1EA.971.675.AT	1EA.971.675.S
IP degree of protection	65/67			
Weight of operating unit	1.95 – 2.05 kg			
Dimensions of operating unit (height x width x depth)	305 mm x 88 mm x 50 mm			

Note

– The mains charging cable may vary depending on the country, e.g. indicator ④ ⇨ *Fig. 93* may be missing. It may not be possible to use your mains charging cable in countries with different power grids (e.g. Norway).
– Please ensure that you always carry suitable charging equipment for the country in which you are travelling. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.

Changing/attaching the cable

Applies to: vehicles with Audi charging system

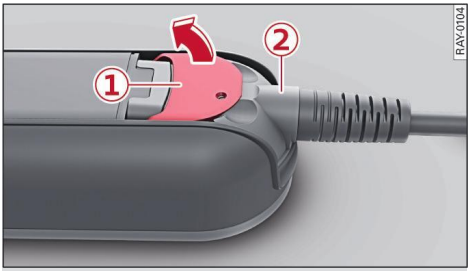


Fig. 94 Operating unit: Releasing/securing the cable

Requirements:

- The high-voltage battery must have finished charging ⇨ *page 114*.
- The vehicle charging connector must be unplugged from the vehicle charging socket.
- The mains plug must be removed from the power outlet.

Releasing the cable

- Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- Pull the connector ② out until the first point of resistance.
- Close the lever ① until it is resting on the connector ②.
- Pull the connector ② all the way out.

Securing the cable

- Lift the lever ① slightly.
- Push the connector ② into the operating unit until the first point of resistance.
- Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- Push the connector ② all the way into the operating unit.
- Close the lever ①.

WARNING

– Please note the warnings for charging ⇨ ⚠ *in Charging on page 114*.
– Always remove the mains cable from the power outlet before changing a cable.
– Change the cable in dry environments only.
– The Audi charging system must always be used complete with the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable. In some countries, the total length of the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable are limited, e.g. to 7.5 m in Israel. Audi recommends that you only use cables approved by Audi.

Note

– The mains cable with mains plug for industrial power outlets and the operating unit of the Audi charging system are specially ▶

matched. Changing the mains cable to a different type of connector can reduce the charging capacity of the entire system. Factors influencing the charging capacity here are the limited power transmission (electrical capacity) per phase and the number of phases available.

– To reduce the risk of the charging system and cable being stolen, you can secure the lever on the charging cable with a screw. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.

Clip wall mount

Applies to: vehicles with clip wall mount

Fig. 95 Clip wall mount: Hooking in Audi charging system

Hooking in the Audi charging system

- ▸ Hook the operating unit into the retainers on the clip wall mount, first at the bottom, then at the top.
- ▸ Press the operating unit back in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 95* so that it engages.
- ▸ Wind the length of cable you do not need around the charging connector mounting ① when you are not charging the high-voltage battery.
- ▸ Plug the mains cable into the power outlet ②.
- ▸ After charging, you can hook the vehicle charging connector into the charging connector mounting ①.

Unlocking/locking the Audi charging system

- ▸ Use the enclosed key to unlock/lock the Audi charging system as required (locked: ④, unlocked: ⑤).

Removing the Audi charging system

- ▸ Unplug the mains cable connector from the power outlet ②.
- ▸ Unwind the cable from the vehicle charging connector ①.
- ▸ To release the operating unit from the holder, press the locking mechanism ③ upwards.

WARNING

Please observe the safety information in the fitting instructions for the clip wall mount.

Towing a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

General information

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle, as well as requiring greater concentration.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer ⇨ *page 139* / ⇨ *page 141*.

WARNING

– Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!
– Use only ball joints of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The use of unapproved ball joints can cause the trailer to be unstable or to become detached during a journey – risk of accident! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Note

If a non-detachable towing bracket is retrofitted to the vehicle, it must not block the number plate or the rear lights. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

Points to check before towing

Trailer weight

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weights ⇨ *page 303*.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can correspondingly climb steeper gradients.

Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

In the interests of road safety, Audi recommends that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected.

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station. Audi recommends checking the draw bar weight, particularly when using twin-axle trailers. If the draw bar weight does not meet the specification, you can adjust it by distributing the load in the trailer correctly. If the draw bar weight meets the specifications, you should not change the load in the trailer.

If the maximum permitted draw bar weight cannot be obtained, the trailer should be loaded so that the draw bar weight is at least 4 % of the actual trailer weight. However, the draw bar weight must not be less than 25 kg. This applies to single-axle and twin-axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1.0 m.

You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or on ⇨ *page 303*.

Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible:

– Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
– Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
– Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about. ▶

– Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.

Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible top speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. Reduce your speed if the trailer starts to sway even slightly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Reduce your speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇨ *page 95* to take the load off the brakes ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior lights

Observe all locally applicable laws and regulations on the lighting systems for your trailer/caravan. If necessary, please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does **not** flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

Exterior mirrors

Make sure that you are able to monitor the road behind the trailer with the exterior mirrors. Use additional mirrors if necessary. Adjust the additional mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

Please observe the relevant local regulations for attaching additional exterior mirrors.

Tyres

Check the tyre pressures on your car, and adjust for “full load” conditions (refer to the sticker listing the tyre pressures) ⇨ *page 272*. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, both the towing vehicle and the trailer should be fitted with winter tyres.

Overrun brake

If your trailer has an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly. When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.

WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.

CAUTION

Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

Note

– Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load.
– Audi recommends having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.

Swivelling towing bracket

Extending / retracting towing bracket

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

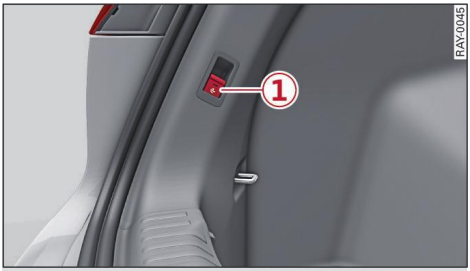


Fig. 96 Luggage compartment: Switch

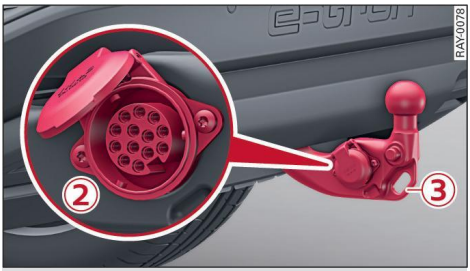


Fig. 97 Rear bumper: Connecting socket and eye for breakaway cable

Extending towing bracket

- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Open the boot lid.
- ▸ Briefly pull the switch ① ⇨ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- ▸ Swivel the towing bracket out manually until it engages audibly in the operating position. The LED in switch ① will light up permanently.
- ▸ Hitch up the trailer or the rear carrier system to the towing bracket.
- ▸ Plug the connector of the trailer or rear carrier system into the trailer socket ②. Use an adapter if necessary.
- ▸ When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the breakaway cable into the eye ③ on the towing bracket.

When you switch on the ignition make sure that the instrument cluster display does *not* display the indicator lamp or the message **Please check towing bracket**.

Retracting towing bracket

- ▸ Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the eye ③.
- ▸ Unplug the electrical connector between the vehicle and the trailer/rear carrier system ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Remove any adapters from the trailer socket ⇨ ⓘ.
- ▸ Unhitch the trailer or the rear carrier system.
- ▸ Briefly pull the switch ① ⇨ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- ▸ Swivel the towing bracket in manually until it engages audibly in the rest position. The LED in switch ① will light up permanently.

When you switch on the ignition make sure that the instrument cluster display does *not* display the indicator lamp or the message **Please check towing bracket**.

Switch ① is not active when the vehicle is in motion or if the boot lid is closed.

Meaning of LED in switch ①

– When the LED is **flashing**, the towing bracket is between the two end positions.
– When the LED is permanently **lit**, the towing bracket is in its final position (operating position or retracted position).

⚠ WARNING

– Make sure that no people, animals or objects of any kind are in the path of the towing bracket.
– If the towing bracket is not correctly engaged or the LED is flashing, the towing bracket is not in its end position. It must NOT be used – risk of accident and injury!
– Never press the switch ① if a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are mounted on the towing bracket – risk of accident!
– Never attempt to interfere with the movement of the towing bracket, for example with tools, while it is swivelling. This can cause damage, in which case the trailer can no longer be towed safely.
– Only use the towing bracket when it has swivelled out fully and engaged securely. ▸

– You should have the towing bracket checked by a qualified dealership if any faults occur in the electrical system or in the towing bracket itself.

CAUTION

– Do NOT hold a high-pressure cleaner directly at the seal of the towing bracket or the trailer socket. This may cause damage to the seal, with the result that moisture can enter and damage the system.
– The swivelling unit, accessories and parts of the vehicle could be damaged if you press switch (1) while a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are fitted to the towing bracket.
– If you have plugged an adapter into the trailer socket, this could damage the bumper and trailer socket when the towing bracket is retracted. Remove the adapter before retracting the towing bracket.

Note

Retract the towing bracket or detach it when there are no trailers, bicycles or similar loads attached to it. This applies especially if the number plate or rear vehicle lighting is masked by the unused towing bracket. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

Note

– The eye (3) on the towing bracket is intended only for securing the breakaway cable of the trailer.
– If you have not used the towing bracket for a relatively long time or have used it constantly without retracting or extending it, the swivelling movement may be stiff or the towing bracket may no longer swivel downwards automatically when the handle is operated. In this case Audi recommends that you extend and retract the towing bracket several times or loosen it by jogging it up and down repeatedly.

Driving with a trailer or caravan

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

Towing bracket

Check that the coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system ⇨ *page 137* – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean the ball coupling before using a trailer without a stabiliser and apply multi-purpose grease to it. Repeat this application regularly if you tow a trailer frequently.

Power supply

When you switch off the ignition, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

Trailer stabilisation system[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket and trailer stabilisation system

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC ⇨ *page 104* for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on ⇨ *page 134* and ⇨ *page 137* to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional. ▶

1) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

WARNING

– The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when the trailer is light.
– It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
– The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene. In this case, apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
– A trailer can still "jack-knife" on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
– Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways.
– Try to avoid towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle. Should you need to drive with this combination, drive particularly slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
– If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.
– If the vehicle is driven with two trailers at once, the trailers may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! The vehicle must not be driven with more than one trailer.
– If the vehicle is driven with a trailer attached off-centre, the trailer may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! Accessories which are designed to attach the trailer off-centre must not be used.

Note

The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

Rear carrier systems

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

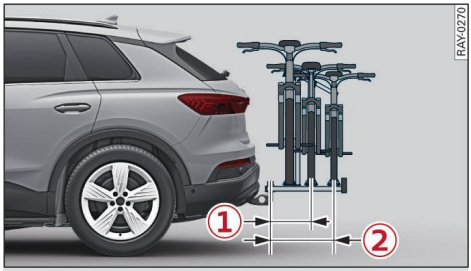


Fig. 98 Rear carrier: Maximum overhang

Rear carrier systems are systems such as bicycle racks which are mounted on the towing bracket.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

Rear carrier system load

The carrying load consists of the rear carrier system and the load transported on it. The maximum recommended carrying load may differ from the vehicle's maximum draw bar weight. The maximum draw bar weight must not be exceeded.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the carrying load. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Determining the maximum carrying load

Look up the draw bar weight for your vehicle in the technical data. You can then find the carrying load in the table below. In accordance with Regulation UN-R 55, Audi recommends that you adhere to the maximum number of bicycles on the rear carrier system as follows: ▶

Maximum draw bar weight (kg)	Maximum carrying load (kg)	Number of bicycles
50 – 74	50	2
75 upwards	75	3

Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

The maximum overhang depends on the maximum carrying load and is as follows:

Maximum carrying load (kg)	Maximum overhang (mm)
50 – 74	500
75	700

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang measured from the centre of the ball coupling to the centre of the rail of the last bicycle carrier is 500 mm ①. For bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles, the maximum is 700 mm ②.

WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please check towing bracket

A malfunction has occurred. If the message appears while the vehicle is moving, stop at the next opportunity. Swivel the towing bracket in and out again. If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Installation dimensions and retrofitting

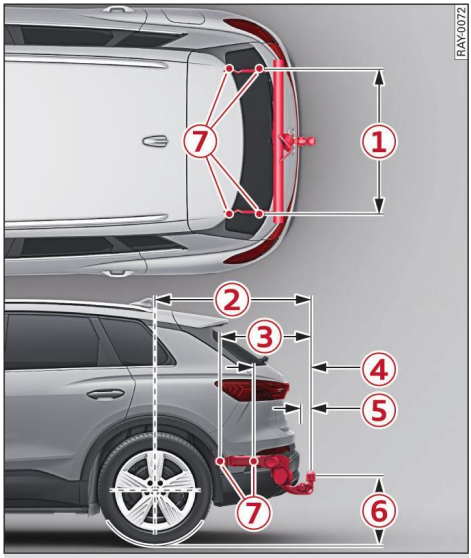


Fig. 99 Towing bracket: Installation dimensions and points

The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points ⑦.

Installation dimensions (mm)	
① 994	④ 361
② 1041 – 1043	⑤ 65 (min.)
③ 581	⑥ 350 – 420

The values given for the distance between the centre of the wheel on the rear axle and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket ② are nominal values of the base vehicle. The dimensions may vary depending on the type of suspension in conjunction with the vehicle's equipment and the load the vehicle is carrying.

The distance between the road surface and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket ⑥ applies to the loading condition in the type approval according to UN-R55 (ECE). This dimension must not be smaller or larger than the value specified. The dimension may vary on vehicles categorised as M1G in the type approval.

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket. ▶

Your qualified workshop will have all the details on retrofitting a towing bracket.

WARNING

– If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
– A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
– For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

CAUTION

If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

Towing bracket with square tube

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

Use only a towing bracket with removable ball coupling bracket and ball coupling. The towing bracket must be officially approved for use with the vehicle and trailer and for the maximum gross weight of the trailer being towed. It must be securely attached to the chassis of the vehicle.

Never attach a towing bracket to the bumper. When fitted, the towing bracket must not impair the effect of the bumper in any way. Never make modifications to the brake system.

Check regularly that the towing bracket is secure. Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

WARNING

Never install a weight distribution or load-balancing towing bracket/hitch on the vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for these kinds of towing brackets. The towing bracket could fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle – risk of accident!

Using the towing bracket

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

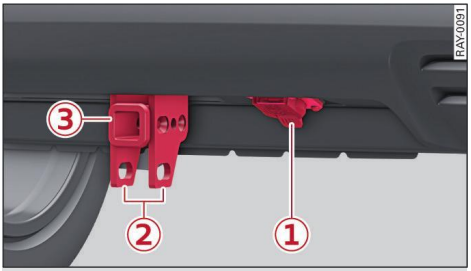


Fig. 100 Rear bumper: Towing bracket

The towing bracket on your vehicle comprises the tube (3), the trailer socket[1)] (1) or trailer socket holder and two loops (2) for the safety chains.

The tube (3) is suitable for attaching a removable ball coupling bracket with ball coupling, e.g. for towing a trailer ⇨ ⚠.

- Check that the tube (3) is free of dirt and clean if necessary.
- Connect the trailer to the socket[1)] (1) and use the loops (2) to attach the safety chains.

WARNING

– For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the ball coupling bracket.
– A ball coupling bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk. The ball coupling bracket must be properly secured in the tube (3). This same applies to any other attachments secured in the tube.
– Use only ball coupling brackets/ball couplings which are approved for use with your vehicle and trailer.
– To prevent the risk of injury, always remove the ball coupling bracket when a trailer is not attached.
– It is essential to remove any dirt from the towing bracket, as it may otherwise be impossible to attach the ball coupling bracket securely in the tube – risk of accident!

1) Depending on country

Note

– A ball coupling/ball coupling bracket is not supplied with the towing bracket. These are available from specialist retailers.
– The loops on the towing bracket are intended only for securing the safety chains of the trailer.

Driving with a trailer or caravan

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Safety chains

Ensure that the safety chains are correctly attached before towing a trailer. There should be sufficient slack in the chains to allow the trailer to be towed around corners, but the chains must not touch the road.

WARNING

If the trailer is equipped with electric brakes, these brakes cannot be controlled by the vehicle's onboard monitoring system – risk of accident!

Retrofitting

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will be experienced in retrofitting towing brackets and will be familiar with the corresponding technical requirements.

WARNING

– If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
– A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
– For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

CAUTION

If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

Driver assist systems

General information

Safety precautions

Please note the safety precautions for the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– As the driver, you always have full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assist systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.
– Only use the assist systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– The assist systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 143*.

Note

– Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
– Always check the current settings of the assist systems before setting off. The settings might have been changed by switching off the ignition or altered by someone else.

System limits

Please note the system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The assist systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
– It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.
– The corrective steering/braking input from the assist systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Note

– The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assist systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning or intervene unexpectedly.
– Non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unpaved or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
– The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at intersections, at roundabouts, at toll gates or in city traffic.
– The ability of the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings can be affected, for example, by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, heavy road spray or adverse light.
– In towing mode, some assist systems may be restricted or unavailable, or may not ▶

react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇨ *page 134*.

– The function that detects the driver's hands on the steering wheel may be limited if you are wearing gloves. The steering assist systems may prompt you to take over the steering more frequently as a result.
– Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assist systems. In addition, the frequency with which the steering assist systems prompt you to take over the steering may differ.

Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

Areas covered by sensors and cameras

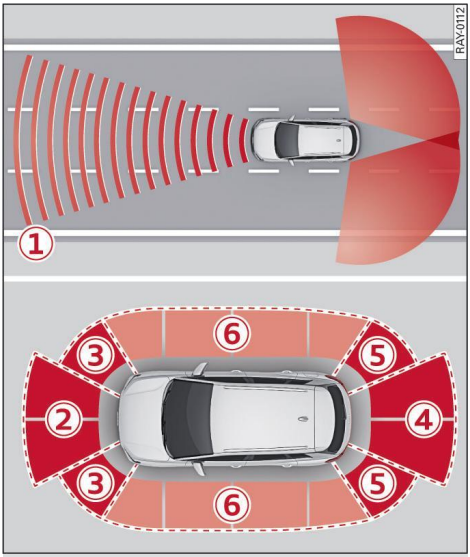


Fig. 101 Areas covered by the sensors

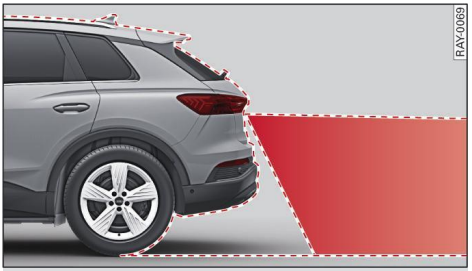


Fig. 102 Area covered by reversing camera

The assist systems evaluate the data from different sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use the assist systems if the area around the sensors and cameras or the underbody has been damaged. This can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the area in front of and behind the vehicle can be detected ⇨ *Fig. 101* ①.

The radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle.

Ultrasonic sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, ultrasonic sensors may be used to depict various areas on the MMI ⇨ *Fig. 101*.

The range of the areas displayed depends on the position of the ultrasonic sensors:

② Approx. 1.20 metres
③ Approx. 0.90 metres
④ Approx. 1.60 metres
⑤ Approx. 0.90 metres
⑥ Approx. 0.90 metres[1)]

The side area ⑥[1)] is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ▶

[1)] Still under development at the time of print.

ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.

Cameras

Only use the camera image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. Please also note that the view on the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red ⇨ *Fig. 102*. Only this area is shown on the centre display ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
– Sensors may be subject to physical system limits. External sources of interference, such as from other vehicles, may impair the function of the sensors. As a result, the supporting systems may be restricted or may not function as expected.

CAUTION

– Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system.
– In some cases, the sensors and cameras may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain objects:
  – Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors and cameras, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects
  – Low obstacles
  – Narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
  – Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars
  – Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

Note

– The radar sensors calibrate themselves once during the first miles after the vehicle is delivered and after a sensor repair. The sensor range may be restricted during the calibration phase.
– Exterior mirrors with surround view cameras must always be fully folded out to work properly. Make sure that the mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.
– The sensors and cameras and their surrounding area must never be covered or painted as this can impair the function of the systems that depend on them. Please ensure that the sensors and cameras are clean and kept free of snow, ice and any other deposits. Accessories, stickers, decals, paint etc. must not be applied to the sensors and must be kept completely outside the sensors' and cameras' range of vision.
– When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.
– Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors and cameras.
– External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
– The areas covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 101* and cameras ⇨ *Fig. 102* are examples and do not represent the range to scale.

Positions of sensors and cameras

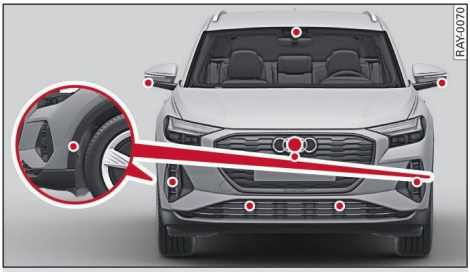


Fig. 103 Front area: Sensors and cameras

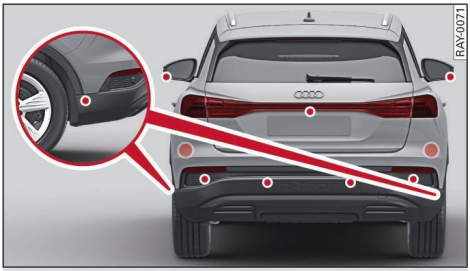


Fig. 104 Rear area: Sensors and cameras

Front area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

– Camera behind the windscreen
– Surround view cameras on the exterior mirrors
– Surround view camera at the front in the radiator grille
– Ultrasonic sensors at the front and sides[1)] of the vehicle
– Radar sensor at the front in the centre of the radiator grille

Rear area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

– Reversing camera in the boot lid
– Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
– Ultrasonic sensors at the rear and sides[1)] of the vehicle

[1)] Still under development at the time of print.

Note

– The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.
– Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

Driver assist menu

Fig. 105 Centre console: Button for driver assist systems

You can switch various assist functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Driver assist** menu.

▸ Press the button (1), or
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Driver assist**.

Press / to switch the desired systems on/off or press > to adjust the individual settings.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Parking aid menu

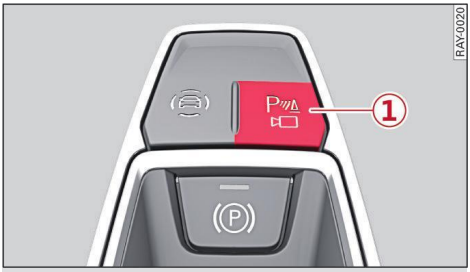


Fig. 106 Centre console: Button for parking aids

You can switch various parking functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Parking aid** menu.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Parking aid**, or
- ▸ Press the button (1) in the centre console and press ⋯ on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

Press ⊂⊃/⊂⊃ to switch the desired systems on/off or press > to adjust the individual settings.

Available settings

The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle. Some of the settings can only be called up via ⋯ and only under certain conditions.

– **Rear volume** ⇨ *page 183*
– **Automatic activation** ⇨ *page 184*
– **Front/rear volume** ⇨ *page 185*
– **Entertainment fader** ⇨ *page 185*
– **Clean reversing camera** ⇨ *page 187*
– **Trailer view** ⇨ *page 187*
– **View** ⇨ *page 188*
– **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇨ *page 190*

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Driver information

Speed warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function helps you to keep the vehicle below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set on the MMI.

As soon as the speed goes slightly above the set value, the speed warning function indicates this with a message in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored maximum speed.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, for example.

Note

– Whether or not you use the speed warning function, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to observe the statutory speed limits for the country in which you are driving.
– On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function warns you when you reach a factory-set speed.

Setting speed limit warning

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

You can set the warning threshold individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨*page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Speed warning – To set the speed warning threshold.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Manually set speed limit (XX) exceeded

The set speed has been exceeded.

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

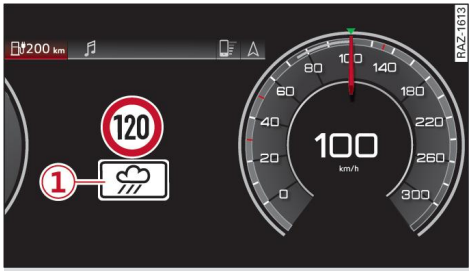


Fig. 107 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

The traffic sign recognition system displays traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster and on the head-up display*. Data from the navigation system are also factored into the information displayed. By interpreting the data, the system is able to display the speed limit even on roads without speed limit signs. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed simultaneously in the instrument cluster. The status line shows the speed limit which currently applies. You can choose not to show the information on the head-up display* ⇨*page 27*.

In cases where the system is able to detect particular types of restrictions ①, these are displayed under the following conditions: ▶

	A temporary speed restriction for wet weather is detected while the windscreen wipers are operating.
	A speed restriction for fog is detected while the vehicle's rear fog light or all-weather lights are switched on.
	A speed restriction applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
	The vehicle is towing a trailer and the **Automatic trailer recognition** option is activated on the MMI. In this case, traffic signs applying to vehicles towing trailers are displayed[a].

[a] Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

Restrictions

The traffic sign recognition system is not available in all countries. It is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

– If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
– In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
– At high speeds.
– If the camera's range of vision ⇨ *page 143* is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 277*
– If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
– If speed limit signs deviate from their standard appearance.
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
– If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
– If traffic signs or routes have changed and the navigation data are out of date.
– If the system detects a speed sticker on a slow-moving vehicle (such as a heavy goods vehicle).

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.

Note

– The traffic sign recognition system only informs and warns you of speed limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, additional driver assist systems may adjust the vehicle's speed.
– The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if **50** is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Calling up the traffic sign recognition

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Setting the traffic sign-based speed warning

You can set the speed warning individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Traffic sign-based speed warning

You can switch the visual and acoustic speed warnings on/off. Depending on the country, speed warnings are either reset to the default setting or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Traffic sign-based warning threshold – You can set a warning threshold. During any period in which you exceed the warning threshold, the speed limit currently detected will be shown on the display with an exclamation mark and will flash briefly. A warning tone also sounds briefly. ▶

Depending on the country, the value set is either stored after a restart or reset to the default setting if a warning threshold of 5 km/h or 10 km/h was previously selected.

Warning tone if a speed is exceeded – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic warning which is issued when a specific speed is exceeded. Depending on the country, the setting is either reset to the default or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Tone when speed limit changes – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic tone which is issued when a speed limit changes. The most recent setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Settings related to towing a trailer[1)]

You can set the speed warning individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Speed warning – You can adjust the following settings in the **Trailer** menu:

Displaying signs for trailers

Important: The automatic trailer recognition must be activated.

You can display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer.

Setting the maximum speed for a trailer

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer. If you do not enter a value or enter a value greater than the legal speed limit, the system will show the maximum national speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the camera-based traffic sign recognition are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted. See owner's manual

This driver message appears if the navigation system lacks data, for example on newly-built roads. The limited functionality may temporarily cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error).

No traffic sign recognised

No relevant navigation data are available in the area, and no speed limit has been detected.

Traffic light information

Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

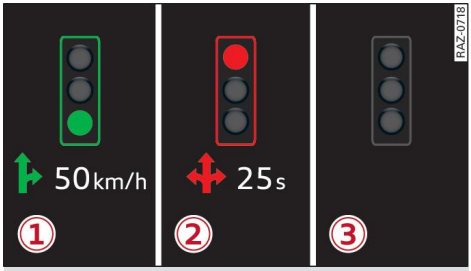


Fig. 108 Instrument cluster: Traffic light information display

The traffic light information function tells you the speed at which you need to travel to reach the next traffic light on green ①, or how long you will be waiting at the next light if it is still red ②. The traffic light information is shown in the ▶

[1)] Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

instrument cluster and head-up display* as soon as traffic light data is available. A grey traffic light symbol ③ may be displayed if the vehicle is in an area with traffic light information but no traffic light signal is being received.

General information

The traffic light information function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

– If the maximum speed limit is exceeded
– If the speed falls below a certain threshold
– If the next traffic light is less than 30 metres away
– If the anticipated waiting time at a red light is less than four seconds
– If no traffic light data are available
– If emergency or public transport vehicles override the regular traffic light cycle
– If traffic lights are under construction or are being serviced
– In the event of warnings from the camera-based traffic sign recognition*
– If the camera-based traffic sign recognition* malfunctions or is unavailable
– If the data connection is interrupted
– If the transmission of data is deactivated in the privacy settings
– If the licence has expired

In these cases, it may not be possible to select the menu item and it may be greyed out

WARNING

– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings and the distance to other vehicles, even when you are using the traffic light information. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
– It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. Never allow the information displayed to lead you to disregard traffic regulations or take risks.
– Whether or not you use the traffic light information, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to stay within the maximum speed limit.
– The traffic light information system does not adjust the speed of your vehicle to the recommended speed in the display.
– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

– At the time of publication, the traffic light information function is available only in a small number of selected towns and cities.
– The availability of the traffic light information is limited.
– The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data* and traffic sign recognition* data are.
– If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system* is out of date, the data in the display may be implausible or incorrect, or the data may not be shown at all.
– Some traffic lights can react to different traffic situations. In this case, the traffic light information display may change abruptly.
– The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The measurement units and language settings shown in the display are based on the MMI system settings ⇨ *page 253*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

Switching the traffic light information on/off

You can switch the traffic light information on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*.

Calling up the traffic light information

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**. ▶

Note

If a different tab or function is selected in the instrument cluster, the traffic light information is displayed in the instrument cluster status line.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Fault. See owner's manual

The system configuration may be missing due to a network fault. Restart the system by switching the ignition off and locking the vehicle. Wait a few minutes until the vehicle has shut down completely and then switch the ignition on again.

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The system is currently out of operation. Check whether any of the following items apply and rectify the cause as necessary:

– The traffic light information is deactivated.
– Data transmission is deactivated.
– The vehicle does not have traffic sign recognition.
– There is no valid licence.
– No traffic light data are available at the current location.

Fatigue warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

Within the system limits, the fatigue warning informs the driver whether they need to take a break.

Once the vehicle is moving, the fatigue warning analyses the driving behaviour in order to estimate whether the driver is fatigued. The result is compared continuously with the current driving behaviour.

If the comparison suggests that the driver is fatigued, the system will recommend a break via a display in the instrument cluster at speeds of 65 km/h and above. If severe fatigue is detected, a tone will also sound.

System limits

The system may misinterpret the driving behaviour in certain driving situations, such as the following:

– At speeds of below approx. 60 km/h
– At speeds of above approx. 130 km/h
– On twisty roads
– On poor road surfaces
– When driving through roadworks
– In poor weather
– During performance driving
– When your attention is distracted
– If the vehicle is towing a heavy or long trailer
– When lane guidance* is activated
– If you are falling asleep or into a microsleep

Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset in the following situations:

– When you switch off the ignition
– When you release the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door
– When the vehicle has been stationary for a certain length of time

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Never drive when you are tired – risk of accident! On long journeys, make sure to take adequate breaks at regular intervals. As the driver, you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.

Note

In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

Switching the fatigue warning on/off

You can switch the fatigue warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Sensitivity – You can adjust the sensitivity of the fatigue warning to **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

Calling up the fatigue warning display

The current estimated fatigue level will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Estimated driver status**.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the fatigue warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Fatigue warning: please take a break!

The system has identified a severe level of fatigue. Take a break.

Fatigue warning: rest recommended

The system has identified a low level of fatigue. Take a break when possible.

Distraction warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with distraction warning

The distraction warning warns you when the system identifies that you are distracted from the road.

The system registers when you perform tasks while driving that distract you from the road, such as using the electric seat adjustment*.

When this is the case, the system warns you with a display in the instrument cluster starting at low speeds. If a high level of distraction is detected, a tone will sound to remind you to concentrate on the road.

System limits

In some cases, the system may be limited or not function at all:

– At speeds of below approx. 10 km/h
– If the driver is severely distracted by external factors (such as the traffic situation)
– If the driver is severely distracted by operating devices which are not connected to the vehicle (e.g. mobile devices)
– If the driver is severely distracted by the infotainment system

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with distraction warning

Switching the distraction warning on/off

You can switch the distraction warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Sensitivity – You can adjust the sensitivity of the distraction warning to **High**, **Medium** or **Low**. ▶

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with distraction warning

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the distraction warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Distraction detected. Please direct your attention to the road.

The system has identified a high level of distraction.

Distraction detected. Please direct your attention to the road.

The system has identified a low level of distraction.

Driver assistance

Speed regulation systems

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The speed regulation systems consist of the cruise control system and the speed limiter.

The **cruise control system** helps you to maintain a speed of approx. 20 km/h and above. The system regulates to the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

The **speed limiter** helps you to avoid exceeding a speed of approx. 30 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

On some equipment versions, the speed limiter considers the layout of the road ahead using the **Adaptation to speed limits** function ⇨ *page 154*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The speed regulation systems are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking as well as to controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
– When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

CAUTION

Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇨ *page 95*. This will reduce the load on the brakes.

Predictive speed limiter

Applies to: vehicles with predictive speed limiter

Important: The speed limiter must be switched on in the **Driver assist** menu via **Speed limiter** ⇨ *page 145*. The map material on the navigation system* must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇨ *page 229*.

The predictive speed limiter helps you to avoid exceeding a speed of approx. 30 km/h and above. The system uses the traffic sign recognition* function and the data from the navigation system* as reference. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit. The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. In certain circumstances, the maximum permissible speed may be exceeded while the predictive speed limiter is limiting the current road speed.

When you switch on the ignition and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially limits the speed to 130 km/h[1)]. If you select a new speed limit manually while driving on a road with no speed limit, the setting is stored and the speed limit is applied on the next road section with no speed limit.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

– It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.
– The cruising speed marking is adjusted on the speedometer when a speed limit is detected even when the predictive speed limiter is not regulating the speed.
– If you switch off **Adaptation to speed limits** on the MMI, the speed limit you have set manually is applied.

1) Depending on country

– If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
– While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.
– The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.
– Please read the information on the camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 147*.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Indicator lamps

– The cruise control system is switched on but not activated.

– The cruise control system is switched on and is actively controlling the set speed.

LIM – The speed limiter/predictive speed limiter is switched on but is not activated.

LIM – The speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the road speed to the threshold set.

LIM (flashing) – The cruising speed set manually or by the predictive speed limiter has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.

LIM AUTO – The predictive speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the road speed to the speed limit currently detected or the cruising speed set manually.

Information is also provided in the head-up display*.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

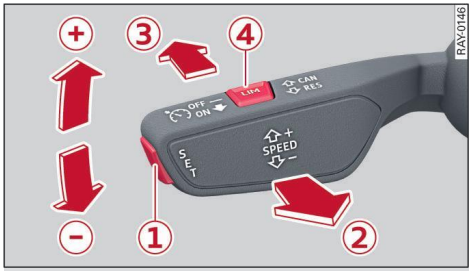


Fig. 109 Control lever: Switching the system on

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Pull the control lever towards you to position ② to switch the system on.
▸ To switch between the cruise control system/adaptive cruise assist* and the speed limiter with/without predictive control, press button ④ on the control lever.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.

Note

The preset cruising speed remains stored when you switch between the systems.

Activating the preset speed/selecting it in advance

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can select the preset speed in advance while the vehicle is stationary or activate it when the vehicle is moving.

Important: The system must be switched on.

- To select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary, press the control lever towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 155, Fig. 109*.
- To activate the preset speed, pull the control lever towards you to position ② while the vehicle is moving.
- To use the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling as the preset speed, press button ① on the control lever.

Changing the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Important: The system must be switched on.

- Briefly push the lever towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 155, Fig. 109* to increase or reduce the preset speed in small steps.
- Hold the lever at ⊕/⊖ to increase or reduce the preset speed continuously.

Overriding/deactivating the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can override or deactivate the preset speed. If you deactivate the system, the preset speed remains stored and you can use it again later.

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator.
- To revert to the preset speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

The cruise control system will be deactivated if you exceed the preset speed for a long time.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

- To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

The stored cruising speed or the speed limit currently detected will be reactivated as soon as the road speed drops below the cruising speed.

Deactivating

- To deactivate the preset speed, push the control lever to position ③ (click stop not engaged) ⇨ *page 155, Fig. 109*, or
- Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Press the brake pedal.

WARNING

– Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
– Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can switch off the cruise control systems if you will not be using them for a longer period of time.

- Press the control lever to position ③ (click stop engaged) to switch the system off ⇨ *page 155, Fig. 109*.

The indicator lamp will disappear and the set speed will be deleted.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

If or LIM is displayed in the event of a fault, the corresponding cruise control systems are unavailable or restricted. ▶

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

LIM Speed limiter: function to use speed limit currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If this message appears, the predictive speed limiter function is temporarily unavailable. The speed will be limited to the cruising speed set manually.

Efficiency assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The efficiency assist can help you to anticipate the driving route and adopt an economical driving style. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

When you have switched on automatic recuperation on the MMI and you take your foot off the accelerator, the efficiency assist controls the recuperation and coasting phases depending on the situation.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
- In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!

Note

- The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data* and traffic sign recognition* data are.
- The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit.
- Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.

Efficiency assist menu

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

You can switch the efficiency assist on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Efficiency assist** menu. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Efficiency assist**.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Event symbols

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The following symbols may appear depending on the equipment fitted. The efficiency assist displays each symbol to indicate the event to which it is currently reacting.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, some of the symbols may only appear in the **Driver assist** display to specify which event the system is reacting to.

Some symbols only appear when **Predictive messages** is activated and some only appear when the **Predictive control** and the adaptive cruise assist* are activated.

Symbol	Description
	Slow down (predictive messages only)
	Speed limit ahead (example)

Symbol	Description
	Corner or **Exit** ahead
	Intersection ahead
	Roundabout ahead
	Gradient (predictive messages only)
	Vehicle ahead (predictive messages only)
	(predictive control only) When the warning/indicator lamp lights up in green and red, this indicates a difference between the speed limit and the set speed.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

Predictive messages

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The symbol appears in the instrument cluster display as soon as the efficiency assist recommends that you take your foot off the accelerator. Event symbols indicate which event the function is reacting to ⇨ *page 157, Event symbols*.

Important

– The cruise control system* or the adaptive cruise assist* must not be regulating the speed.
– The speed must be at least 30 km/h.
– The remaining route must be long enough for the system to react to the event.
– Audi drive select must not be set to **dynamic** mode.

Switching predictive messages on/off

You can switch the predictive messages on/off in the **Efficiency assist** menu ⇨ *page 157*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the efficiency assist. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

Note

– The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– If a route has been entered in the navigation system*, that route will be used as reference for the tips given. If no route has been entered, the system uses an assumed route plan to predict the situation ahead.
– The type of information displayed can vary depending on the transmission position and on the driving mode currently selected in Audi drive select*.
– More messages are shown in the Audi drive select **efficiency*** mode.

Adaptive cruise assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may perform the following functions:

The **adaptive cruise control** assists you by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front within certain limits imposed by the system. When it detects a vehicle ▶

in front, the adaptive cruise assist can accelerate and brake within certain system limitations. When there is no traffic in front, the adaptive cruise assist works just like a normal cruise control system by maintaining a constant speed. When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by automatically applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). As soon as it detects no more vehicles in front, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed.

Within certain system limits, the additional **lane guidance** function helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane. You can select whether the adaptive cruise assist provides assistance in lane guidance ⇨ *page 163, Switching lane guidance on/off*.

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the **assisted lane change** function can direct the vehicle into an adjacent lane on multi-lane motorways ⇨ *page 163*.

In **congested traffic and traffic jams**, the system can brake down to a standstill and move off again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The **predictive control** system can adjust the speed in response to events ⇨ *page 165*.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Restrictions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

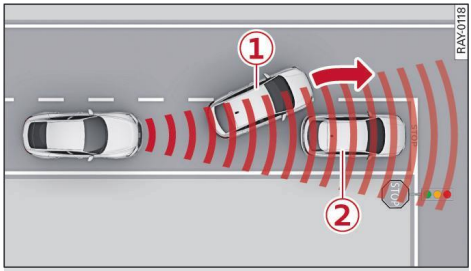


Fig. 110 Example: Vehicle changing lane and vehicle stationary

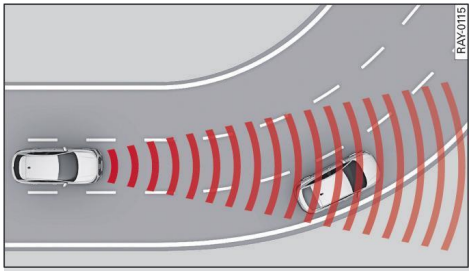


Fig. 111 Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise assist functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself:

– If a vehicle (1), which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist, turns off or changes lane and another stationary vehicle (2) is located in front of that vehicle, the system cannot always react to the stationary vehicle.
– When driving into a bend ⇨ *Fig. 111* and driving out of a bend, the system may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
– The system operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision ⇨ *page 143, Fig. 101*.
– In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise control may no longer be recognised, and ▶

the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.
– The system will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
– The system cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
– The ability of the system to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
– Vehicles that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
– The system does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

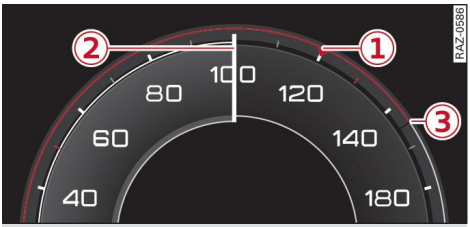


Fig. 112 Instrument cluster: Display on speedometer

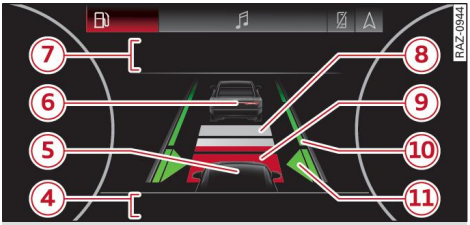


Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

The driving situation and the settings are displayed on the instrument cluster ⇨ *Fig. 112*. More detailed system information is shown on the **Driver assist** ⇨ *Fig. 113* display. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Display on speedometer

The display on the speedometer is not available in all layouts*.

① Marker for set speed
② Current speed
③ Available speed range of the adaptive cruise assist (example)

Driver assist display

The display in the **Driver assist** screen appears only if it was called up on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 17*.

④ Driver messages and settings
⑤ Own vehicle
⑥ Vehicle detected in front
⑦ Driver messages and settings
⑧ Specified distance set
⑨ The distance bars are coloured in red from the bottom up as soon as the actual distance is shorter than the set distance.
⑩ Availability of lane departure warning
⑪ Availability of lane guidance of adaptive cruise assist

Indicator lamps

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. No vehicle has been detected in front. The set speed will be maintained.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. A vehicle in front has been detected. The system is regulating the speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. A vehicle in front has been detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically. ▶

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. No vehicle has been detected in front. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

– You must intervene. The system alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently ⇨ *page 165, Take over braking prompt* or the safe start monitor is issuing a warning ⇨ *page 169*.

– Lane guidance is active.

– Actively take over the steering immediately. The system limits have been reached ⇨ *page 165, Take over steering prompt*.

– Lane guidance is switched on but not active ⇨ *page 163, Lane guidance limitations*.

/ – Actively take over the steering immediately. No steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits ⇨ *page 165, Take over steering prompt*.

– It is possible to start an assisted lane change ⇨ *page 163*.

– An assisted lane change is being performed.

/ – Actively take over the steering immediately; the assisted lane change has been cancelled.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Operating adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

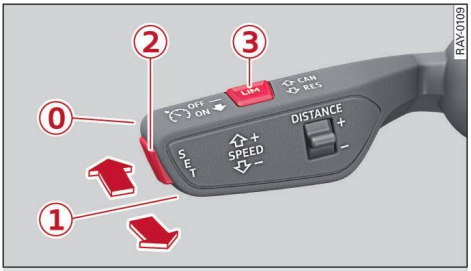


Fig. 114 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist

Fig. 115 Control lever: Setting a new speed

Switching on

▸ To switch the adaptive cruise assist on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the cruise control:

▸ Press the SET button ②. The set speed will be indicated by a marking on the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 160, Fig. 112* and displayed in the instrument cluster ⇨ ⚠.
▸ If the vehicle is stationary, you should also keep the brake pedal depressed to store the speed.

You can set any speed between 20 km/h and the maximum of the available speed range ③[1] ⇨ *page 160, Fig. 112*. ▶

[1] Depends on country and power unit

Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

The regulating function can be interrupted at any time.

- ▸ While driving or when stationary: Push the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow, or
- ▸ While driving: Press the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp will go out.

Resuming the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be called up again after the regulating function has been paused.

- ▸ To resume the regulating function while you are driving, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ To reactivate the regulating function when the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal and pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Setting a new speed

- ▸ Briefly push the lever towards ⊕/⊖ to increase or reduce the set speed in small steps.
- ▸ To increase or reduce the set speed continuously, hold the lever towards ⊕/⊖ until the marking on the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 160, Fig. 112* reaches the desired cruising speed.

Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The predictive control system can adjust the set speed automatically in response to events ⇨ *page 165*.

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed, even when the adaptive cruise assist is inactive, by moving the lever in the appropriate direction ⊕/⊖. To activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise assist if you will not be using it for a longer period of time.

- ▸ Push the lever away from you to position ⓪ until it engages.

The indicator lamp and the set speed will disappear.

WARNING

- – Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
- – The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- – Only switch on the adaptive cruise assist in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- – When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane or through road works, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.
- – If you press the SET button ② at a speed of less than 20 km/h, the vehicle will automatically apply the minimum speed setting. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.

Note

- – Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- – If the speed limiter* is selected after the ignition is switched on, the adaptive cruise assist must have been selected beforehand. Press the LIM* button ③ to select the adaptive cruise assist. ▶

– The speed setting is deleted for safety reasons when you switch off the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist.
– The ESC and traction control system (ASR) are automatically activated when the adaptive cruise assist is switched on.
– The system is switched off/cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.

Switching lane guidance on/off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance

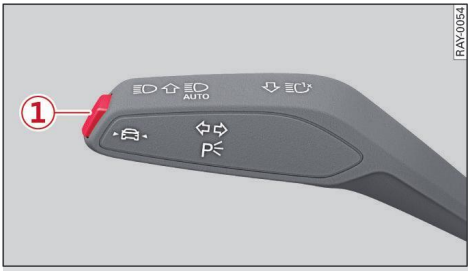


Fig. 116 Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance

The lane guidance function can be switched on and off. Within certain system limits, it helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

Activating/deactivating lane guidance availability

▸ To activate/deactivate the lane guidance availability, press the button (1) on the turn signal lever briefly.

The arrows (11) in the **driver assist** display ⇨ *page 160, Fig. 113* and indicator lamps ⇨ *page 160* indicate whether the lane guidance is available.

The lane guidance assists you by making steering inputs only if the adaptive cruise assist is controlling the vehicle's speed/distance and the availability is switched on.

Lane guidance limitations

If lights up in white, lane guidance is switched on but not active. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

– The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The bend is too tight.
– The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
– The turn signal was activated.
– You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

– Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– Audi recommends that you use the lane guidance on major roads only.

Assisted lane change

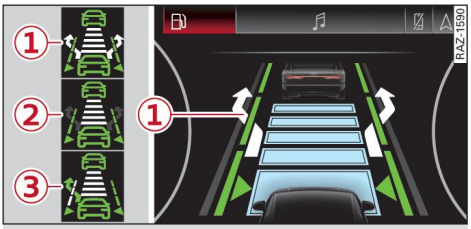


Fig. 117 Instrument cluster: Assisted lane change display

Introduction

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the assisted lane change function can direct the vehicle into an adjacent lane on multi-lane motorways. ▶

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the system additionally uses the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle, the parking sensors and the cameras ⇨ *page 143, Fig. 101*.

Display overview

When the requirements are met, the availability of the assisted lane change function is automatically shown by arrows ① to ③ in the instrument cluster.

① White arrow – The system has not detected any objects in the area covered by the sensors. An assisted lane change can be started for the lane on the corresponding side.

② Grey arrow – It is not possible to use the function for the lane on the corresponding side.

③ Green arrow – An assisted lane change is being performed.

Requirements

- The assisted lane change must be switched on via **Adaptive cruise assist** in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*.
- The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating the vehicle's speed ⇨ *page 161*.
- The vehicle speed must be above approx. 90 km/h.
- The navigation system must have recognised that the vehicle is on a multi-lane motorway. The map material for the navigation system* must be updated regularly ⇨ *page 229*.
- The sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings are fully functional and the vehicle's surroundings have been detected sufficiently.
- The arrow ① shows a possible lane change on the corresponding side.

Starting an assisted lane change

- To start an assisted lane change, briefly press the turn signal lever in the required direction (one-touch signalling) ⇨ ⚠.

The arrow ③ will appear. While the vehicle is changing lane, the turn signal on the corresponding side will flash automatically. The turn signal will be switched off automatically once the vehicle has finished changing lane.

Manual cancellation

The assisted lane change can be cancelled manually at any time:

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Move the steering wheel by hand, or
- Use the turn signal.

Automatic cancellation

The assisted lane change is cancelled automatically under the following circumstances:

– If the vehicle is travelling too slowly,
– If the adaptive cruise assist is no longer active,
– If the system requirements are no longer met, e.g. the vehicle's surroundings are not detected sufficiently,
– If the hazard warning lights have been switched on.

Take over steering prompt

If the symbol or and a corresponding message appear, actively take over the steering immediately. The assisted lane change has been cancelled automatically or manually.

Driver messages

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145*. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings when you are using the assisted lane change function. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic ▶

situation and take appropriate care – risk of accident!
– The assisted lane change serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the lane change and for steering the vehicle.

Note

Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Prompts to take control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

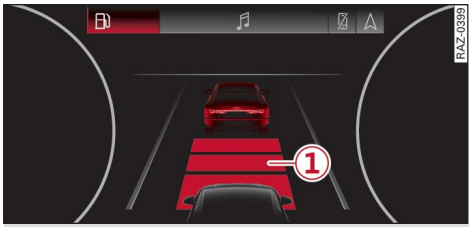


Fig. 118 Instrument cluster: Take over braking prompt

Take over braking prompt

If the warning lamp lights up and the driver message **Distance!** appears, apply the brake pedal to slow down your vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

In such cases, the adaptive cruise assist alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front.

The illustration ① is also shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 17*.

Take over steering prompt

If the warning lamp lights up, actively take over the steering immediately. The system limits have been reached, for example because the system's steering power is insufficient in tight bends. The system may no longer be active after a short time and may only be available again later.

If the warning/indicator lamp or lights up and a corresponding message appears, actively take over the steering immediately. Insufficient steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits. Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. If you do not take over the steering, the adaptive cruise assist will be stopped and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 180*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Note

– Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.

Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and predictive control

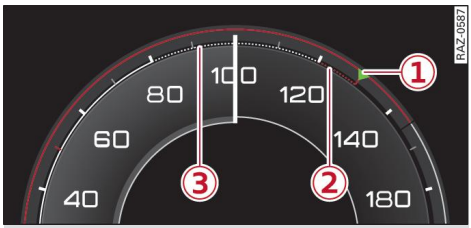


Fig. 119 Instrument cluster: Predictive control display in speedometer

How it works

When the predictive control is active, the efficiency assist function adapts the cruising speed setting ① for the adaptive cruise assist to recognised speed limits and the road layout ahead. When there are no longer any events detected by the system, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed which you set most recently. When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on initially after the ignition has been switched on, the availability of the predictive control is indicated by a driver message.

Symbols indicate which events the predictive control is reacting to ⇨ *page 157, Event symbols*.

Important

– At least one predictive control must be switched on via **Adaptive cruise assist** in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*.
– The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating the vehicle's speed ⇨ *page 161*.
– The system can only react to speed limits of 20 km/h and higher.
– The map material on the navigation system* must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇨ *page 229*.

Display on speedometer

The display may vary depending on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all layouts*.

① Marking indicating set speed (i.e. the cruising speed set by you or by the predictive control).
② Red band showing difference between speed limit and set speed.
③ Band showing planned reduction in set speed based on road layout ahead.

Overriding the regulating function

You can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator. In addition, the control lever ⇨ *page 161, Fig. 115* can be used to change the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is deactivated if you make a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

Setting predictive control

You can switch the predictive control on/off or adjust the individual settings under **Adaptive cruise assist** in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Use speed limit – The regulation of the cruising speed according to speed limits ahead can be switched **On** or **Off**. The optional control setting **With tolerance** can also be applied. In this case, the actual speed can be above or below the set speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

Adaptation to route ahead – The function for adapting to the route ahead can be switched **Off** or adjusted individually from **Slow** to **Fast**. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control, e.g. how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

Driver messages

If a driver message with **Predictive control** is displayed in the event of a fault, some or all of the functions are unavailable.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145*. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

– The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not stop at traffic lights – risk of accident!
– The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce the speed setting in **Adaptation to route ahead**.

Note

– When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the maximum speed limit. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.
– The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The marking (1) ⇨ *page 160* is adjusted to the set speed when a speed limit is detected even when the adaptive cruise assist is not regulating the speed.
– When the recuperation function is active, the actual road speed may occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
– The system's control response depends on the driving program set for the adaptive cruise assist/the Audi drive select* mode selected.
– When you switch on the ignition and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially regulates the speed to 130 km/h[1)]. After this, the last speed set by the driver is applied.
– The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance.
– If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system* is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
– While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

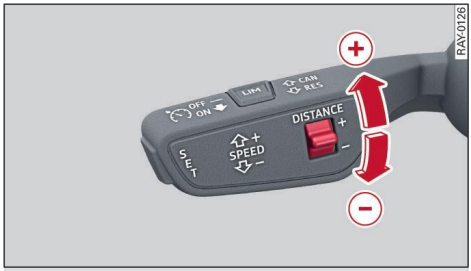


Fig. 120 Control lever: Setting the distance

When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

▸ To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch.
▸ To increase or reduce the distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch again towards (+)/(-).

The newly set distance will be displayed briefly, e.g. indicator lamp .

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The higher the speed, the higher the distance. The following distances can be set: ▶

[1)] Depending on country

Symbol	Time-based distance	Distance at 100 km/h
	approx. 1 second	28 m
	approx. 1.3 seconds	36 m
	approx. 1.8 seconds (generally recommended)	50 m
	approx. 2.4 seconds	67 m
	approx. 3.6 seconds	100 m

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

– When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– In the **Driver assist** display, a graphic ⑧ ⇨ *page 160, Fig. 113* will be shown instead of the warning/indicator lamps. The display provides the same information as the warning/indicator lamps.
– The acceleration style ranges from moderate to dynamic, depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting ⇨ *page 169, Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings*.
– The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

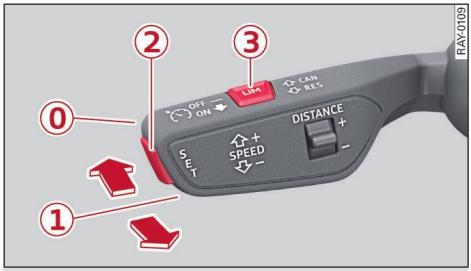


Fig. 121 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist

Important: The regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist must be activated for all additional functions.

Overriding the regulating function

You can override the regulating function completely, e.g. to overtake another vehicle or accelerate faster.

▸ Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate manually.
▸ Take your foot off the accelerator pedal to continue using the function.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, the driver message **Overridden** will appear.

Response when turn signals are on (to overtake)

If you operate the turn signal and the adaptive cruise assist concludes that you are intending to perform an overtaking manoeuvre, the system can accelerate before you change lane and reduce the distance to the vehicle ahead. This happens automatically if you are driving behind another vehicle and activate the turn signal to overtake.

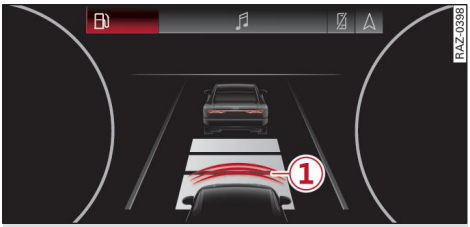
WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system ▶

might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
– The functions are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to changing lane, braking, controlling the vehicle's speed and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Driving in congested traffic

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor
Fig. 122 Instrument cluster: Safe start monitor

Stopping with the adaptive cruise assist

The adaptive cruise assist also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the adaptive cruise control applies the brakes (within the system limits) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist[1)]

If the message **Ready to drive off** and are on the display and the vehicle in front drives off, your vehicle will automatically start moving ⇨ ⚠.

If the vehicle has been stopped for too long, the message will disappear and the vehicle will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons.

▸ You can extend or re-activate the period in which the vehicle is **ready to drive off** automatically for a short time by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 168, Fig. 121*.
▸ To set the vehicle in motion again manually, tap the accelerator with your foot.

[1)] Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Safe start monitor

Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so ⇨ ⚠. The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if an obstacle is detected.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, this is also illustrated ① ⇨ *Fig. 122* along with the driver message **Warning!**. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

▸ If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– If the **Ready to drive off**[1)] message appears, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your car and the vehicle in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle in front – risk of accident!

Note

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise assist is activated only if
– the driver's seat belt is fastened,
– all the doors and the bonnet are closed,
– the vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can adjust the adaptive cruise assist settings individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings: ▸

89A012720AM

Store last distance – The last distance is stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance (time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds) is automatically selected as the default setting.

Applies to: vehicles without Audi drive select

Driving program – Depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting, the handling characteristics will range from **dynamic** to **moderate**.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The handling characteristics are adjusted according to the distance setting and the Audi drive select mode ⇨ *page 102*.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

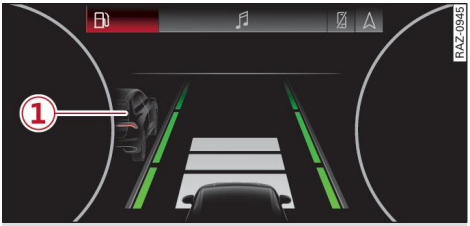


Fig. 123 Instrument cluster: Overtake prevention

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145*. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

① **Overtake prevented**[1)]

This driver message and the graphic ① of a vehicle detected in the next lane appear when the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed to prevent you from overtaking on the right/left[1)]. The symbols are only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 17*.

Adaptive cruise assist: please take over.

This message appears, for instance, if the vehicle rolls backwards when driving away on a slight gradient, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling back or colliding with an object behind.

Distance warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning

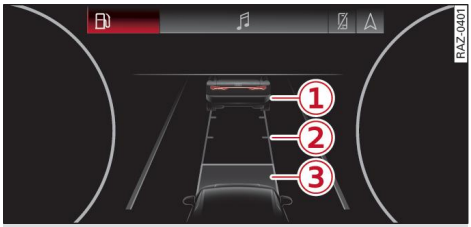


Fig. 124 Instrument cluster showing current distance

Fig. 125 Instrument cluster showing distance warning

How it works

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approx. 65 km/h. The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes continuously below the warning threshold. ▶

[1)] Depending on country

Driver assist display

The symbols are only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 17* and the adaptive cruise assist* is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance.

① Vehicle detected in front

② You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 s.

③ Warning threshold setting. The display is coloured from the bottom up, depending on the setting.

④ The actual distance is shorter than the set distance and your attention is drawn to the danger.

Adjusting distance warning settings

You can switch the distance warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

– **Warning threshold**

Driver messages

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

– As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

– The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is below the threshold for an extended period of time.

Lane departure warning

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings by correcting the steering. The steering wheel may vibrate as well.

The system works at speeds of approx. 65 km/h[1)] and above. It is not available at very high speeds.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

[1)] 55 km/h in certain countries

Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

Fig. 126 Turn signal lever: Button for lane departure warning and lane guidance function of adaptive cruise assist*

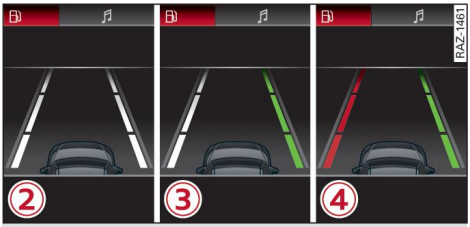


Fig. 127 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

Switching the lane departure warning on/off

- You can switch the lane departure warning on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*, or
- Press and hold the button (1) on the turn signal lever until the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on or goes off.

Overview of displays and warnings

Indicator lamps indicate whether the system is available and/or ready to give warnings. The lane departure warning system is ready to give warnings when it detects a demarcation on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving.

Driver assist display	Indicator lamps	Meaning
(2) White line(s)		The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings on the corresponding side.
(3) Green line(s)		The lane departure warning system is switched on and ready to give warnings on the corresponding side.
(4) Red line		The lane departure warning system warns you by correcting the steering before you cross the lane demarcation on the corresponding side.
-		Red lines on both sides: The lane guidance function of the emergency assist* is active ⇨ *page 180*.
-	Off	The lane departure warning system is switched off[a]. A driver message is also displayed.

a) The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.

If the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time, a message will appear asking you to drive in the centre of the lane. The steering wheel may also vibrate to warn you if the detected lane demarcations are crossed. You can switch steering wheel vibration on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

When the indicator lamp lights up, the lane departure warning system is not ready to give ▶

warnings. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

– The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The bend is too tight.
– The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
– You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
– The turn signal was activated.

Take over steering prompt

If the lane departure warning is triggered repeatedly and no steering activity is detected, you will be warned by acoustic and visual signals, e.g. , to take over the steering. Take over the steering and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times. The system may no longer be ready to warn after a short time and may only be available again later.

If you do not take over the steering, the lane departure warning will no longer be ready to give warnings and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 180*.

Response when turn signals are on

Applies to vehicles without side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the lane departure warning is active, the steering will be corrected noticeably just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep in the lane.
– In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Note

– If the lane departure warning is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition[1)].
– Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.
– The display in the **Driver assist** screen appears only if it was called up on the onboard computer ⇨ *page 17*.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane departure warning function and the lane guidance function of the adaptive cruise assist* are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

1) Varies depending on country and model

Audi pre sense

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The Audi pre sense functions can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations within the system limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be fitted:

– The **Audi pre sense basic** system can react in unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers), or in the event of emergency/preventative braking.
– The **Audi pre sense front** system can detect an impending frontal collision and can react by giving warnings, applying the brakes and activating protective functions for the safety of the occupants.
– The **Audi pre sense rear** system monitors the traffic travelling behind the vehicle and can react to an impending rear-end collision.
– The **swerve assist** system can help you to steer around an obstacle in critical situations where you take sudden evasive action.
– The **turn assist** system can detect oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane when you are turning off and can react by applying the brakes if they are identified as critical.

Audi pre sense protective functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following functions may be activated in certain situations:

– Visual and acoustic warnings.
– Activation of hazard warning lights[1)].
– Reversible seat belt tensioners.
– Automatic closing of windows and panoramic sunroof.
– Adjustment of the seats.
– Additional protective functions provided by the individual systems.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

– Only some of the protective functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select* mode selected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.
– Audi pre sense may also be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:
  – If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
  – After the ignition is switched on while the indicator lamp is lit.
  – If the vehicle is reversing.
  – If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
  – The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is activated automatically at speeds above approx. 30 km/h. In unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers) or in the event of emergency/preventative braking, Audi pre sense basic can activate protective functions ⇨ *page 174, Audi pre sense protective functions*.

The driver message **Audi pre sense** draws your attention to danger.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

1) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

In certain situations, Audi pre sense front can give a warning if there is a danger of a frontal collision, and can apply the brakes firmly if necessary. The system uses data from the front radar sensor and the camera behind the windscreen and is active at speeds above approx. 5 km/h.

Driving situations

The system can react to certain events, depending on how quickly the vehicle is travelling.

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 85 km/h:

– You approach a stationary vehicle.
– A pedestrian[1)] or cyclist[1)] is moving in your lane.

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 250 km/h:

– A vehicle ahead brakes significantly.
– You approach a much slower vehicle from behind.
– You approach a stopped vehicle (the system is only capable of reacting if it previously detected that this vehicle was moving in the same direction as you).

Advance warning

The system can warn the driver of hazards it detects at road speeds of approx. 30 km/h and above. **Audi pre sense** will appear in the instrument cluster and a warning tone will sound.

Brake jolt

In the event of an impending collision with another vehicle, an acute warning may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. In addition, your attention is drawn to the danger in the instrument cluster display. You may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

Automatic brake pressure increase

If you do not brake hard enough in the event of an impending collision, the brake pressure may be increased automatically in certain situations.

Automatic braking

If you do not respond to the acute warning, the system can, subject to general system limitations, apply the brakes heavily in order to reduce the impact of a potential collision.

If the vehicle has been braked to a standstill, **Please take control!** will appear in the instrument cluster and you must take control of the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The protection provided by Audi pre sense is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
– Among other things, Audi pre sense front does not react to diagonally crossing pedestrians/cyclists, groups of people, animals, crossing and oncoming traffic or objects such as poles, fences and railbound vehicles.
– Audi pre sense may be restricted or unavailable in corners or after dark.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– Ensure that all occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and are seated properly as described in this manual ⇨ *page 60*.

1) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

– If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual.

Note

Certain functions of the system may not be available when the ESC is restricted or switched off ⇨ *page 105* or when a fault has occurred.

Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Audi pre sense rear uses the data from the radar sensors fitted at the rear corners of the vehicle to calculate the probability of a collision with the vehicle behind, within certain system limits.

The protective functions of the Audi pre sense system may be activated if it detects a collision risk from the vehicle behind.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Audi pre sense rear does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Note

– The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system are deactivated if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.
– The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system may be deactivated if a fault develops in the side assist.

Swerve assist

Applies to: vehicles with swerve assist

The swerve assist can help you to steer around an obstacle in critical situations where you take sudden evasive action. If you take action to avoid an obstacle following an acute warning, the swerve assist will help you by applying a small amount of steering torque to correct your steering angle while you are steering actively. The swerve assist is available at speeds of between approximately 40 km/h and 150 km/h.

Depending on the country, the symbol may appear in the instrument cluster when the swerve assist intervenes.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The swerve assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Note

– The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

Turn assist

Applies to: vehicles with turn assist

When you start to take a turn-off to the left[1)], the turn assist can prevent a collision with an oncoming vehicle by applying the brakes and keeping the vehicle in the lane you are in. This function is only available when you operate the turn signals and are driving at less than approximately 15 km/h.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

▶

1) In countries with left-hand traffic: A turn-off to the right

– The turn assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Note

– The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

Adjusting Audi pre sense settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

You can switch Audi pre sense and the associated systems on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨*page 145*. The systems can only be switched off/on when the vehicle is stationary.

If you switch Audi pre sense off, the indicator lamp will light up and a corresponding message will appear.

Note

– If you switch the Audi pre sense system off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.
– Switch off Audi pre sense on private roads and if the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. This prevents the Audi pre sense system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the Audi pre sense system are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Stop the vehicle, switch the ignition off and clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨*page 145*.

If the message is still displayed when you switch the ignition back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

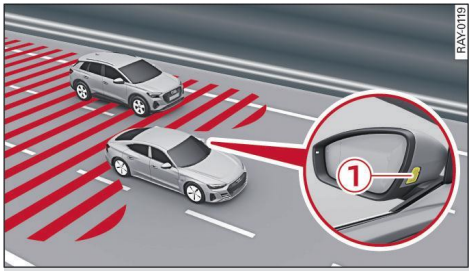


Fig. 128 Driving situation and warning signal on exterior mirror

How it works

The side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle and helps you when changing lane. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal (1) lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

The side assist function is active at speeds above approx. 15 km/h and can detect situations such as the following:

– Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
– There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
– You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

Information mode

As long as you have not activated a turn signal, the system informs you of objects which it judges ▶

89A012720AM

to be critical by activating the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror (1).

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, if other driver assist systems detect that you are in danger of leaving your lane, the warning signal may flash to warn you of objects which the system judges to be critical, even if you have not activated a turn signal. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an additional warning ⇨ *page 171, Lane departure warning*.

System limits

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 145, Fig. 104*. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

– When driving at the edge of your own lane
– When driving in narrow lanes
– When driving through a corner
– If there are high barriers next to the lane
– When driving through roadworks

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.

Note

– The radar sensors calibrate themselves once during the first miles after the vehicle is delivered and after a sensor repair. The sensor range may be restricted during the calibration phase.
– The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
– The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 128* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Adjusting the side assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

You can switch the side assist on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Brightness

Always adjust the brightness with the side assist function switched on so that you can monitor the selected setting in the warning signals on the exterior mirrors. Please adjust the brightness of the warning signal for the information mode so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. Because the display brightness is automatically adjusted in accordance with the ambient light level, it is possible that the display may already have been automatically adjusted to the lowest or highest setting. ▶

Note

If the system is switched on, the warning signals on the exterior mirrors light up briefly every time the ignition is switched on.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the side assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 145, Fig. 104* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Exit warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

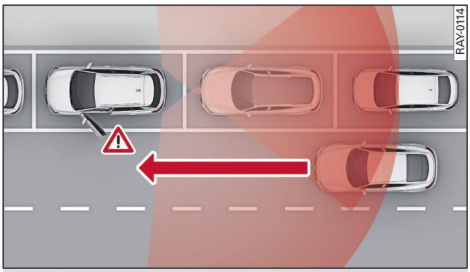


Fig. 129 Detected traffic approaching from behind

How it works

The exit warning system can recognise traffic approaching from behind (within certain system limitations) and warn you as you get out of the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 129*. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

Display and warnings

If a door is opened when the vehicle is stationary, the warning signal (1) in the exterior mirror ⇨ *page 177, Fig. 128* flashes on the corresponding side of the vehicle and a warning signal is given if another road user in a critical situation is detected. The warning signals will light up if a road user judged by the system to be critical approaches when the door is already open.

The driver messages for the exit warning system are identical to the messages for the side assist ⇨ *page 179*.

Switching the exit warning system on/off

You can switch the exit warning system on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
- Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The exit warning system cannot replace the full concentration of the occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for their own safety and the safety of other road users when opening the doors and leaving the vehicle.
- The exit warning does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.
- The exit warning does not react to stationary objects or persons.
- The exit warning does not react if the vehicle is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the vehicles in front and behind.

Note

- The exit warning system can remain available for approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door or after switching off the ignition.
- The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted ▶

the system may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The brightness of the exit warning lights cannot be adjusted.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 129* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Driver messages about the exit warning system

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the exit warning system functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 145, Fig. 104* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Emergency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

How it works

The emergency assist can detect if the driver is inactive within certain system limits. The system issues a warning in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same lane.

The emergency assist is available automatically at speeds above approx. 10 km/h when lane guidance is active on the adaptive cruise assist. If the adaptive cruise assist is not activated, the emergency assist (if activated) is only available if the vehicle is travelling at more than approx. 65 km/h and the lane departure warning is ready to give warnings.

If any of the requirements for the adaptive cruise assist or lane departure warning are no longer met, the functionality of the system may be restricted or it may be deactivated automatically.

Functions of the emergency assist

Phased measures can be taken. The vehicle can intervene within the limits of the system. The measures which can be taken depend on the hazard situation and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

– Visual and acoustic warnings
– Vehicle guidance
– Gradual reduction in vehicle speed
– Infotainment volume reduction
– Seat belt jolt
– Brake jolt
– Hazard warning lights are activated[1)]
– Audi pre sense protective functions are activated ⇨ *page 174*
– The brakes are applied and the vehicle is brought to a standstill
– The vehicle's horn sounds repeatedly

As soon as the vehicle has come to a standstill, it makes preparations for the occupants to be rescued. The parking brake is applied, the doors are unlocked and the interior lights are turned on. A few seconds after the vehicle has stopped, an emergency call[1)] will be placed if necessary.

Display

If is displayed, for instance, the emergency assist's lane guidance is active.

Overriding the emergency assist

You can override the emergency assist as follows ⇨ ⚠:

– Move the steering wheel, or
– Press the brake pedal, or
– Press the accelerator firmly, or

When the vehicle is stationary, the emergency assist can be cancelled by selecting a transmission position or by releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 99*.

1) This function is not available on all models or in all countries.

Driver messages

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop.

Note

Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

Parking and manoeuvring

Introduction

Depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle, you may be provided with assistance by various parking aids when you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

Parking aids

When you are parking, the **rear parking aid** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 182*.

When you are parking, the **parking aid plus** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected in front of, behind and beside* the vehicle ⇨ *page 184*.

The **reversing camera** uses the centre display to show a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image from the reversing camera assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇨ *page 186*.

The **surround view cameras** are an extension of the reversing camera; they provide various views of the area around the vehicle to help you when parking and manoeuvring ⇨ *page 186*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇨ *page 190*.

Assisted parking

The **park assist plus** helps you to find suitable parking spaces and to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of them. The system controls steering movements, gear changes, acceleration and braking. The driver must always keep an eye on the area around the vehicle and monitor the parking/unparking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 193*.

Available settings

You can set the parking aid functions individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 146*. Some of the settings can only be called up via ⋯ and only under certain conditions.

– **Rear volume** ⇨ *page 183*
– **Automatic activation** ⇨ *page 184*
– **Front/rear volume** ⇨ *page 185*
– **Entertainment fader** ⇨ *page 185*
– **Clean reversing camera** ⇨ *page 187*
– **Trailer view** ⇨ *page 187*
– **View** ⇨ *page 188*
– **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇨ *page 190*

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Note

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Rear parking aid

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid

How it works

The rear parking aid will help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle by providing warnings about any obstacles detected. If an obstacle is detected by the sensors in the vehicle's rear bumper ⇨ *page 143, Fig. 101*, you are informed of this by acoustic and visual warnings.

Activating/deactivating

The system is activated automatically when the power unit is active and reverse gear is selected.

The system is deactivated automatically when you drive forwards at over approx. 10 km/h.

In some countries, the system cannot be deactivated when reverse gear is selected.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings on the centre display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments ① ⇨ *page 184, Fig. 131* represent objects detected in the direction in which you are travelling. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the ▶

penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Do not continue reversing!

White segments (3) indicate detected objects not located in the direction in which you are travelling (e.g. if a transmission position is no longer selected).

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately ⇨ (!).

▸ To switch off the acoustic signals for the parking/unparking manoeuvre, press in the centre display. In some countries, the acoustic signals are reactivated after the transmission position is changed or the next time the parking aid is activated.

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 146*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Rear volume – Volume for the rear zone.

Entertainment fader – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

Fault warnings

If appears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

Note

– The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
– A distance warning will NOT be given if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Parking aid plus

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

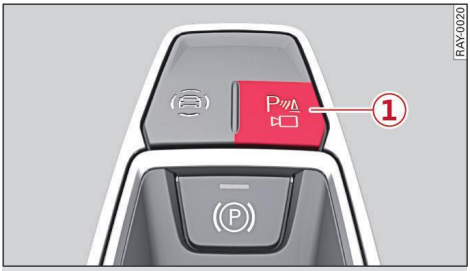


Fig. 130 Centre console: Button for parking aids

How it works

The parking aid plus will help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle by providing warnings about any obstacles detected. If an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇨ *page 143, Fig. 101*, you are informed of this by acoustic and visual warnings.

Activating/deactivating

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under approx. 10 km/h.

▸ Press the P or P button ① in the centre console.

In some countries, the system cannot be deactivated when reverse gear is selected.

Automatic activation

▸ The system is activated automatically when the power unit is active and reverse gear is selected, or

The parking aid is activated automatically if the vehicle approaches an obstacle when driving forwards at under approximately 10 km/h and **Automatic activation** is switched on in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 146*. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.

Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when you are travelling forwards at speeds of approximately 10 km/h and above.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

Note

– If the parking aid is deactivated, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:
  – The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
  – The ignition is switched off and on again.
  – The parking brake is applied and released again.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

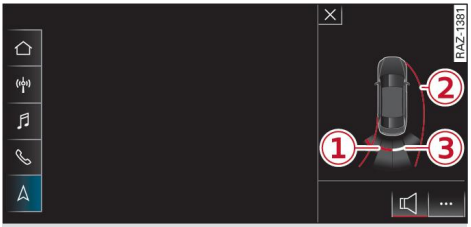


Fig. 131 Centre display: Distance indicator

When the sensors detect an obstacle, you will be alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a visual display.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings on the centre display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments ① represent objects detected within the path of travel. The red lines ② indicate the anticipated path of travel, depending on the steering wheel angle. A white segment ③ indicates an obstacle that has been detected outside the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segments move ▸

towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately.

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the front or rear of the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 0.20 m from the side*[1] of the vehicle; in this case, you should not drive forward or reverse any further ⇨ (!).

- ▸ To switch off the acoustic signals for the parking/unparking manoeuvre, press in the centre display. In some countries, the acoustic signals are reactivated after the transmission position is changed or the next time the parking aid is activated.

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 146*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Front volume – Volume for the front and side*[1] zones.

Rear volume – Volume for the rear zone.

Entertainment fader – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

Fault warnings

If appears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If is shown on the MMI, the corresponding ultrasonic sensor is iced up or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145*.

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Applies to vehicles with assisted parking functions: If you use the assisted parking functions to park in short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!

Note

- The segments in the side zone*[1] are detected and evaluated as the vehicle moves past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In ▸

[1] Still under development at the time of print.

this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.

– The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
– There is no rear or side*[1)] distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Reversing camera/ surround view cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

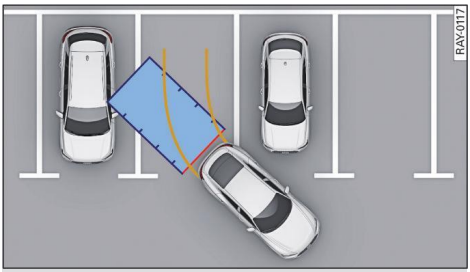


Fig. 132 Display showing orientation lines for parking

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, a reversing camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available.

The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.

The **surround view cameras** additionally provide a wide range of views showing the area around the vehicle; these can be selected as preferred.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

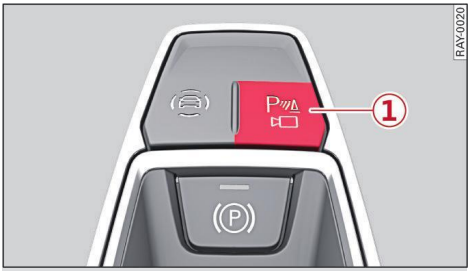


Fig. 133 Centre console: Button for parking aids

Activating/deactivating

- Press the button (1) in the centre console, or
- Press on the centre display when the distance indicator ⇨ *page 184, Fig. 131* is displayed.

The system can be activated at low speeds, for example when manoeuvring.

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the power unit is active and reverse gear is selected.

Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed when driving forwards.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

[1)] Still under development at the time of print.

Cleaning the reversing camera

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

Important: The reversing camera must be activated and **Rear view*** or **Corner view (rear)*** must be selected.

▸ Select ··· > **Clean reversing camera** on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

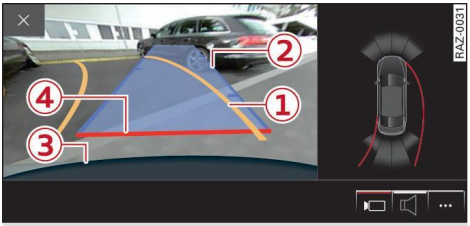
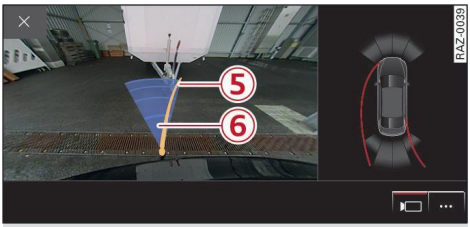


Fig. 134 Centre display: Approaching a parking space



Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

Fig. 135 Centre display: Trailer view

When using the reversing camera/surround view cameras to help you park, the acoustic and visual warnings from the parking aid will provide you with further guidance ⇨ *page 184*.

Visual orientation lines

① The orange orientation lines represent the path of the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines are pointing towards the parking space.

② You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the horizontal blue markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 metre. The blue area is an extension of the vehicle outline to the rear of the vehicle.

③ You can see the rear bumper at the bottom of the display.

④ You should stop reversing, at the latest, when the red orientation line is bordering on an obstacle.

Trailer view

Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

Important: The reversing camera or surround view cameras must be activated.

– Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Switch to the **Rear view** ⇨ *page 188, Fig. 136*.
– Select ··· > **Trailer view** on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

The trailer view ⇨ *Fig. 135* makes it easier to position your vehicle in front of a trailer. The orange orientation line ⑤ ⇨ *Fig. 135* indicates the anticipated path of the tow-bar. You can use the blue markings ⑥ to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 0.3 m. The width of the blue area represents the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

Symbols

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

If /// is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, the camera will not be available on the corresponding side. The exterior mirrors may have been retracted electrically or one of the doors or the boot lid may be open.

If appears, a system fault has occurred and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera in this area has malfunctioned.

If a symbol remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

89A012720AM

– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

– The orange orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.

– Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

– Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Note

There is no rear or side*[1] distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

How to use the surround view cameras

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

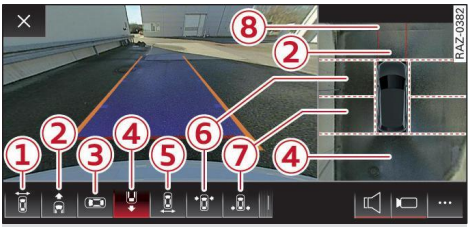


Fig. 136 Centre display: Surround view cameras

On vehicles with surround view cameras, you can choose from a selection of different views.

Selecting views

▸ To display the whole selection bar, tap on the current view ① or swipe the edge of the selection bar from left to right[2].

▸ To select a view, press ① – ⑦ or tap on an area on either side of the vehicle[3].

Settings for the side of the display

The overhead view is shown on the side of the display. You can change the view in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 146*. You can switch between **graphic** and **camera**. ▶

1) Still under development at the time of print.

2) In some countries the gesture is made in the opposite direction. The order of the views may differ. However, the symbols used to identify the views are the same.

3) Important: The area around the vehicle (**camera**) must be selected and visible in the side **view**.

	Symbol/designation	Description
①	**Corner view (front)** or Display selection bar	This view makes it easier to leave narrow parking spaces and to drive out of exits and intersections where your view is restricted. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area in front of the vehicle.
②	**Front view**	This view helps you make the most of the space in front of the vehicle when manoeuvring.
③	**Overhead view**	This view helps you to manoeuvre and position the vehicle precisely. The overhead view is composed from the camera pictures. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇨ ⚠.
④	**Rear view**	This view helps you make the most of the space behind the vehicle when manoeuvring. The image from the reversing camera is displayed.
⑤	**Corner view (rear)**	This view can be helpful when driving out of narrow parking spaces or out of an exit onto an obscured road. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area behind the vehicle.
⑥	**Front tyres**	This view helps you monitor the steering angle and the distance from the front tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
⑦	**Rear tyres**	This view helps you monitor the distance from the rear tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
⑧	Steering wheel angle	The red lines show the anticipated path of the vehicle using the current steering angle ⇨ ⓘ.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The **overhead view** display is generated using the individual camera images. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

CAUTION

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Note

– Depending on the gear selected, the system will switch automatically between the suitable views (**Front view** or **Rear view**). If you change the view manually, the system will temporarily stop switching between views automatically.
– **Corner view (front)** is displayed the first time you activate the system while in a forward gear.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

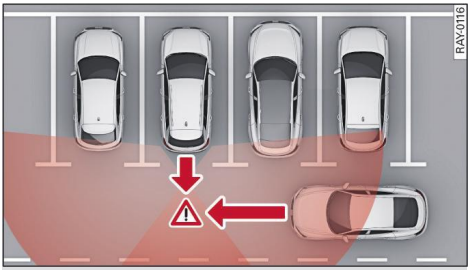


Fig. 137 Areas covered by sensors for rear cross-traffic assist

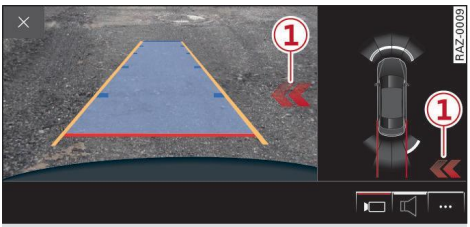


Fig. 138 Centre display: Rear cross-traffic assist display

How it works

The rear cross-traffic assist uses the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 137*. When driving out of a parking space, you are assisted by an MMI display ① and various warnings.

Requirements for the use of the rear cross-traffic assist:

– The parking aid must be activated ⇨ *page 182*.
– The vehicle must not be reversing faster than approx. 10 km/h.

Displays, warnings and braking

– **Display**: The arrows ① only appear when the parking aid is activated. On vehicles with surround view cameras, the arrows only appear for camera views **Rear view** and **Corner view (rear)**. The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching.
– **Acoustic warnings**: A tone may sound continuously as an additional acoustic signal when you are reversing.
– **Automatic brake jolt**: If the driver does not react to a warning, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

The warning tone and the automatic brake jolt only occur while you are reversing.

Switching the rear cross-traffic assist on/off

You can switch the rear cross-traffic assist on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 146*.

Driver messages

If , or is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 145, Fig. 104* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The rear cross-traffic assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as bicycles. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
– The system may not react in time or may not react at all if other objects are approaching very quickly.
– The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

▶

Note

– After an automatic brake jolt, no further brake jolt will occur for the next few seconds.
– The functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may no longer be able to warn you audibly of obstacles it has detected.
– The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 137* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Assisted parking

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

If your vehicle is equipped with the park assist plus, the system will help you to find suitable parking spaces. To do this, parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors fitted on the sides of the vehicle.

The system provides assistance with parking/unparking while you monitor the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking aids, cameras* and direct vision.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Options for driving into or out of a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

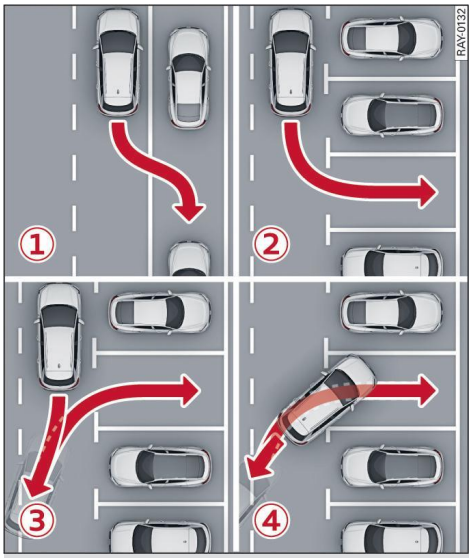


Fig. 139 Overview of parking options

The following parking options may be available to you depending on when the system is activated:
– After attempting to park the vehicle yourself ① – ④ ⇨ *page 192*.
– After using the parking space search function ① – ③ ⇨ *page 192*.

Options for driving into a parking space

① Reversing into parallel parking spaces.
② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces.
③ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them.
④ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces.

Options for driving out of a parking space

① Driving out of parallel parking spaces.

Activating after attempting to the vehicle park yourself

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

If you have started driving or reversing into a parking space, you can activate the system to help you complete the parking manoeuvre.

Important: You must have started manoeuvring the vehicle into the parking space yourself and the vehicle must be far enough into the parking space for the space to have been measured.

- ▸ Brake the vehicle to a standstill, if you have not already done so.
- ▸ To activate assisted parking, press P on the centre display while the parking aid is switched on. The following message will appear on the centre display **Park assist plus: please take your hands off the steering wheel and press "OK" to start the parking procedure.**
- ▸ Confirm the option in the centre display and start the assisted parking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 194*.

Finding a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

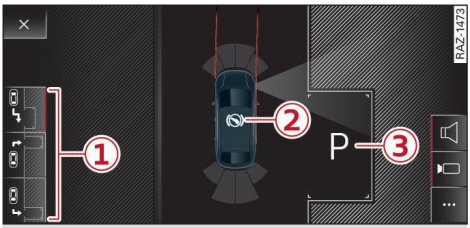


Fig. 140 Centre display: Parking space search activated

① Display showing options for parking
② Arrows and symbols indicate the driver response required (e.g. continue driving forwards or apply brakes)
③ Parking spaces detected and selected by the system

Activating the parking space search function

- ▸ To activate the parking space search function while the parking aid is switched on, press P on the centre display.
- ▸ To activate the parking space search function at vehicle speeds above 10 km/h, press the P button ① in the centre console ⇨ *page 184, Fig. 130*.

The centre display will show the vehicle looking for a parking space ⇨ *Fig. 140*.

You can activate the system after you have already driven past a parking space (as long as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, press P on the centre display.

Looking for a parking space

- ▸ Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.
- ▸ The vehicle first looks for a parking space on the same side of the road. To look for a space on the other side of the road, activate the turn signal for that side or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the centre display.

Selecting a parking space

When the system finds a parking space which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, this space is displayed. The system automatically suggests an option for driving into the space ①.

If there are different options for driving into the space, you can choose one of them manually. Press on one of the suggested options ① on the centre display.

Starting the parking manoeuvre

Follow the visual instructions on the centre display ② to reach the correct starting position. A **P** will appear in the intended parking space ③ as soon as the vehicle reaches the correct position.

- ▸ Position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or to the kerb.
- ▸ Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Start the assisted parking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 194*.

Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇨ ⚠. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area ▶

which may impede the parking manoeuvre or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

– Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
– Certain objects (e.g. trees and pillars/posts) or surfaces (e.g. gravel, snow and ice) in and around the parking space can cause unexpected results when parking – risk of collision.
– The assisted parking systems must not be used when the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier system is fitted.

Note

– The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre. If the ESC intervenes, the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.
– The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.
– If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals or press on the corresponding side on the centre display to park on the other side of the road, even if you have already activated the park assist.
– Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on steep inclines or tight bends.

Park assist plus

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

The park assist plus parks the vehicle after a parking space has been found, and can drive it out of a parallel parking space afterwards. The park assist plus takes over the steering, acceleration, braking and gear changes while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
– Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

– Do not use the park assist plus if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle or if snow chains are fitted.
– In certain situations, the park assist plus will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or ▶

wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the manoeuvre.
– When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.

Note

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations when using the park assist plus. The park assist plus may be prohibited in certain countries. Depending on the country, the system may be deactivated due to a comparison with a country list. Data are not transmitted to Audi. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Using the park assist plus to park the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected ⇨ *page 192*. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with and the brake must be applied.

- ▸ Press on the button in the centre display to start the parking manoeuvre.
- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠. The indicator lamp in the centre display indicates that the park assist plus is active and in control of the vehicle. An arrow on the vehicle roof indicates the current direction of travel.
- ▸ Stop the parking manoeuvre by applying the brakes fully if the situation is unclear. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.
- ▸ To continue the parking manoeuvre, release the brake pedal again. The rest of the parking manoeuvre is then re-calculated based on the vehicle's position.

End of parking manoeuvre

The parking manoeuvre ends automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches its final position in the parking space. When a parking manoeuvre has been completed successfully using the park assist plus, the parking lock will be engaged and the parking brake will be applied.

Stopping the park assist plus ⇨ *page 195*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– When the park assist plus is active, you should only release the brake pedal if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.
– The park assist plus serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– When the park assist plus is being used, the steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

Note

– You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal.
– Objects which mark the edges of the parking space (e.g. bollards) may be misinterpreted by the system. Take control of the vehicle and perform the parking manoeuvre manually ⇨ *page 195* if the vehicle is not fully inside the parking space or if the vehicle attempts to drive beyond the edge of the parking space.

Using the park assist plus to leave a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, you can use the park assist plus to drive out of the parking space. ▶

- ▸ Switch on the power unit.
- ▸ Press the button in the centre console.
- ▸ Press on the centre display with the parking aid activated.
- ▸ Wait until a message appears on the centre display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- ▸ Activate the corresponding turn signal or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the centre display.
- ▸ Press on the button in the centre display to start manoeuvring out of the parking space.
- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇨ . The indicator lamp in the centre display indicates that the park assist plus is active and in control of the vehicle. An arrow on the vehicle roof indicates the current direction of travel.
- ▸ Stop the unparking manoeuvre by applying the brakes fully if the situation is unclear. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.
- ▸ To continue the manoeuvre out of the parking space, release the brake pedal again.
- ▸ Actively take over the steering and press the brake pedal as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre to ensure the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and does not return to the central position ⇨ .

Stopping the park assist plus ⇨ *page 195*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.
– When the park assist plus is active, you should only release the brake pedal if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.
– The park assist plus serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– When the park assist plus is being used, the steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

CAUTION

Risk of causing damage to other vehicles – you must actively take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so.

Note

You can reduce the speed specified by the system or stop the vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

Stopping the park assist plus

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

You can stop the park assist plus at any time by applying the brakes. To continue the parking/unparking manoeuvre, release the brake pedal again.

Function stops automatically

The park assist plus stops automatically under the following circumstances:

– If you switch off the system;
– If you move the steering wheel by hand or press the accelerator;
– If the time limit has been exceeded;
– If an obstacle is detected;
– If the ESC intervenes.

Take full control of the vehicle and complete the parking/unparking manoeuvre manually, or

In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Keep the brakes applied and press in the centre display.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, ▸

89A012720AM

sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 142* to ⇨ *page 145*.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

If the indicator lamp , , or lights up, the park assist is unavailable or has been stopped.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 145* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can use a wide range of telephone functions in your vehicle conveniently via the MMI.

The following options may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth
– Using two telephones
– Using the Audi phone box

WARNING

– According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
  – Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  – If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
– The speech dialogue system* ⇨ *page 28* must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
– Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the power unit.
– Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 21, Notes on traffic safety*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

– The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle.
– You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Setting up

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: The vehicle must be stationary. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to more than one mobile phone.

▸ Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇨ *page 253* and the mobile phone.
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
▸ Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
▸ To update the list, press ↻.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.
▸ Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

After connecting successfully

The contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the MMI. This may take several ▶

89A012720AM

minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone and the type of connection, you can use the following functions:

Using the handsfree system

Important: Your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (HFP).

The handsfree system is available for use. Your phone calls will be made via the aerial of your mobile phone.

Sending and receiving text messages

Refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Note

– Please note any system queries on your mobile phone or the MMI, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may need to confirm the download of your contacts and allow access to your messages separately.
– You can also search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
– Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when the Bluetooth function is switched on and the devices are within range of the car. The mobile phone last connected is given priority.
– You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones in the Connected devices menu ⇨ *page 255*.
– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.

Using two telephones

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can connect two mobile phones simultaneously via Bluetooth HFP to the MMI system (e.g. your business and personal mobiles). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile: You can send and receive messages with both mobile phones ⇨ *page 205*.

Connecting a second mobile phone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI and the vehicle must be stationary. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device.

▸ Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇨ *page 253* and the mobile phone.
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > , or
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Telephone 1**/**Telephone 2** > **New connection**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
▸ Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
▸ To update the list, press .

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.
▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.
▸ Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

After connecting successfully

Refer to ⇨ *page 197, After connecting successfully*.

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI. ▶

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > .

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Disconnecting a mobile phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Use the Connected devices menu to disconnect a connected Bluetooth device ⇨ *page 255*.

Using the Audi phone box

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

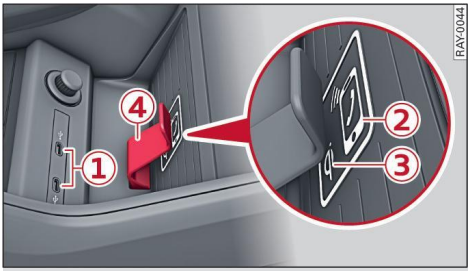


Fig. 141 Front centre console: Audi phone box with holder and connections

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can use the following functions with the Audi phone box:

– Making and receiving calls using the vehicle's external aerial
– Charging your mobile phone via USB input
– Wireless mobile phone charging
– Reminder signal

Restrictions

In some situations, the functions of the Audi phone box may be restricted or temporarily unavailable. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

– More than one mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box.
– The mobile phone is in a bag or a protective case.
– There are objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone.
– The mobile phone is not in the centre of the Audi phone box.

WARNING

– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident! Operate the mobile device via the MMI only.

Making and receiving calls using the external aerial

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

With the Audi phone box, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. Using the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Open the holder ④ ⇨ *page 199, Fig. 141* of the Audi phone box.
▸ To make a phone call on your mobile phone via the vehicle's external aerial, place it with the back of the phone on the phone symbol ② between the Audi phone box and the holder ④

Charging the mobile phone via the USB input

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged in the Audi phone box using special USB adapters ⇨ *page 242*.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ To charge your mobile phone via USB, connect it to the USB input ① ⇨ *page 199, Fig. 141*. ▶

Note

– USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
– Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.

Charging a mobile phone wirelessly

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged wirelessly in the Audi phone box.

Important: The ignition must be switched on and your mobile phone must be Qi compatible.

▸ Make sure that the wireless charging function is switched on:
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Reminder signal and mobile phone charging**.
▸ Activate the **Wireless mobile phone charging** function.
▸ Open the holder (4) ⇨ *page 199, Fig. 141* of the Audi phone box.
▸ To charge your mobile phone wirelessly, place it with the back of the phone against the Qi symbol (3) between the Audi phone box and the holder (4).

WARNING

– The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly. Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it. Take the mobile phone out of the Audi phone box carefully.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging plate of the Audi phone box. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can switch the Audi phone box's wireless charging function on/off. You will still be able to charge your mobile phone using a cable.

Note

– The maximum charging capacity is 5 W.
– The charging time and temperature vary depending on the mobile phone being used.

Reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

When the reminder signal function is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile phone is still in the Audi phone box when you are leaving the vehicle.

Important: A Qi compatible mobile phone must be in the Audi phone box, or your mobile phone must be connected to the USB port with charging function via a USB adapter with the smartphone interface active, or your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth and be charging with a USB adapter via the USB port with charging function.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Reminder signal and mobile phone charging**.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following settings are available:

– **Sound**
– **Off**

Spoken

This setting is activated at the factory.

Notes on mobile phone: Reminder, charge level

If this function is switched on, notifications on the charging status of your mobile phone will be displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile phone when you leave the vehicle.

Using the telephone

Accessing telephone functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

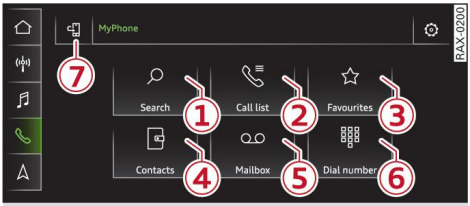


Fig. 142 Centre display: Selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.

Possible telephone functions:

① **Search**
② **Call list** 201
③ **Favourites** 201
④ **Contacts** 202
⑤ **Mailbox** 202
⑥ **Dial number** 203
⑦ **Switch phones** 204

Managing the call list

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

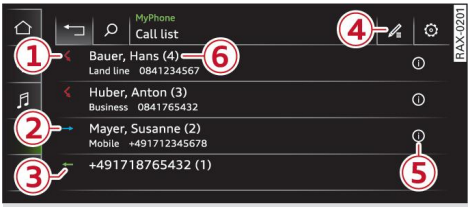


Fig. 143 Centre display: Call list

Calling up the call list via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Call list**.

Calling up the call list via the multi-function steering wheel

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the telephone tab > ☰ button > **Call list**.

Possible symbols in the call list:

① Missed calls
② Numbers dialled
③ Received calls
④ Edit telephone numbers
⑤ Display business card 202
⑥ Number of interactions with a contact

If there has been more than one interaction with a contact or a number, the most recent action is displayed in the form of an arrow ①, ② or ③.

Call list options

Press and hold a contact or phone number from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

– **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 201*.
– **Send text message** ⇨ *page 205*
– **Send e-mail** ⇨ *page 206*

Edit number

You can edit a phone number before making a call.

Show history

Important: You must have had more than one interaction with a contact.

All interactions with a contact/number will be displayed.

Managing favourites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store contacts for all connected mobile phones in the favourites list for quick access.

Calling up favourites

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Favourites**.

Storing favourites

▸ Press ☆ ⇨ *page 202* in the business card, or
▸ Press **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 201* in the options menu. ▶

Deleting favourites

▸ Press ★ ⇨ *page 202* in the business card, or
▸ Select: **Favourites** > ✎ > *one or more favourites* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Note

The favourites can only be edited on the MMI.

Managing directories

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can manage up to four directories on the MMI.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

Calling up the directory

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Contacts**.

The contacts will be displayed. You can change the sort order ⇨ *page 205*, **Sort order**.

Deleting imported contacts

Important: You must have imported a contact ⇨ *page 205*.

▸ Select: **Contacts** > ✎ > *one or more contacts* > **Delete** > (**Done**). The imported contacts will be deleted.

Directory options

▸ Press and hold a contact from the directory until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

– **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 201*.
– **Send contact**: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 205*.
– **Send text message** ⇨ *page 205*
– **Send e-mail** ⇨ *page 206*

Note

– Please pay attention to any synchronisation requests on your mobile phone when downloading contacts.
– In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
– Please note that only contacts from the mobile phone with an active connection are displayed.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are visible at all times and are not protected against access by other users.
– When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will update the mobile phone's directory if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system.
– You can only delete the contacts in the local MMI memory.

Calling up a business card

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The business card shows you a contact's details.

▸ To open the business card, press on a contact in the directory, or
▸ In the call list, press ⓘ (5) ⇨ *page 201, Fig. 143*.

Possible options in the business card:
▸ **To make a call**: Press on a phone number.
▸ **To store a favourite**: Press ☆.
▸ **To delete a favourite**: Press ★.
▸ **To send a text message**: Press 💬.
▸ **To start navigation**: Press on an address.
▸ **To send an e-mail**: Press on an e-mail address.
▸ **Send contact**: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 205*.

Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Calling up the mailbox

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Mailbox**.

Entering the mailbox number

Important: No mailbox number must have been stored yet. ▶

▸ Enter the desired number.
▸ Press **OK**.

Selecting the mailbox number

Important: A mailbox number must already have been stored.

▸ Press **Mailbox**. The call will be started immediately.

Note

This service must be set up and activated by your mobile network service provider.

Dialling a number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you may be able to dial a number in the following ways:

– Entering text via the MMI ⇨ *page 25*.
– Using the voice control function ⇨ *page 28*.

Call options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ To answer/end a call, press the ✆ button on the multi-function steering wheel. For information on how to use it, refer to ⇨ *page 15* and ⇨ *page 30*.

Depending on your mobile phone, the following options may be available for an incoming call on the MMI:

– **Answer**
– **Ignore**
– **Message**

The Bluetooth connection is severed if you leave the vehicle during a phone call. Depending on the mobile phone, active calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone.

Note

Media playback or the radio is muted automatically during a call.

During a telephone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The following options may be available during a call depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection:

– **End call**
– **Mute**

Sending a tone sequence

Press **Numbers**. You can enter DTMF tones ("touch-tones"), which are then sent to the person you are speaking to.

Hold

To place the current call on hold. Press **Resume** to take the call again.

Answering an incoming call

Depending on your mobile network service provider, one of the following options may be available:

– **Answer**: The current call will be placed on hold. You will then receive the incoming call.
– **Replace**: The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

Declining an incoming call

If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.

Conference

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

Up to five callers and one caller on hold can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).

Switching between calls

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

You can switch between two phone calls.

Further call options

Press **More**.

The following options may be available depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection: ▸

Transfer call to mobile phone

To transfer the current call to your mobile phone/ Bluetooth headset*.

Retrieve call

To transfer the current call from your mobile phone back to the MMI.

Add call

You can start a new call. The current call will be placed on hold.

Remove conference participants

If a conference is in progress, you can remove participants individually.

Microph. input level

You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

Note

The option Call waiting must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls during a conversation.

Dialling the emergency number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Dial number** > *the emergency number for the specific country (e.g. 112)* > **Dial**.

WARNING

– Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when vital communication is required (e.g. in a medical emergency).
– Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.

Settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > ⚙.

The following settings are available, depending on your mobile phone:

– **Ignore with text message**
– **Edit mailbox number**

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch phones: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

Ring tone and volume settings

– **Ring tone and message volume**: You can adjust the volume by moving the slider.
– **Ring tone**: Select a ring tone from the list.
– **Microphone input level**: You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

Serial number (IMEI) of data module

Applies to: vehicles with data module

The serial number (IMEI) will be displayed.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Contacts** > ⚙.

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch phones: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

The directory of the selected telephone will be displayed. ▶

Hide greyed out contacts

If this function is switched on, contacts for which no number has been stored are hidden.

Sort order

You can sort contacts by **surname** or **first name**.

Download contacts

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

Import/export contacts

Important: A USB mass storage device must be connected to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 242*.

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the MMI.

– **To import contacts from a storage device**: Important: The USB mass storage device must contain contacts in vCard format. These must not be stored in subfolders. Select: **Import contacts** > **Search for import data** > **USB device 1**/**USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all** > **Start import**.
– **To export contacts to a storage device**: Important: You must already have imported a contact. Select: **Export contacts** > **Find export medium** > **USB device 1**/**USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all** > **Start export**.

Note

– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the MMI system.
– There should be no files or directories on the storage medium other than the contacts you wish to import.
– It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.
– Apple devices or MTP devices (e.g. smartphones) are not recognised as USB storage devices.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **Text message (telephone 1)**/**Text message (telephone 2)**.

The following functions are available:

– **New text message***
– **Inbox**
– **Sent**
– **Outbox***
– **Drafts***
– **Deleted**

User-defined*

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

Message options

Press on a text message.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

– **Read**
– **Reply**
– **Forward**
– **More**

To switch between messages, press 〈 or 〉.

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

– **Call**
– **Forward**
– **Navigate to**
– **Extract numbers**
– **Resend**

▶

Settings

Press ⚙.

Notification for new text messages

When a new text message is received, an envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.

Note

Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

E-mail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and e-mail

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **E-mail (telephone 1)**/**E-mail (telephone 2)**.

The following functions are available:

– **New e-mail**
– **Inbox**
– **Sent**
– **Outbox**
– **Drafts***
– **Deleted***

User-defined*

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

Message options

Press on an e-mail.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

– **Read**
– **Reply**
– **Reply to all**
– **Forward**
– **More**

To switch between messages, press 〈 or 〉.

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

– **Call**
– **Forward**
– **Extract e-mails**
– **Navigate to**
– **Extract numbers**
– **Display receiver**
– **Resend**

Settings

Press ⚙.

Notification for new e-mails

When a new e-mail is received, an envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ▶

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇨ *page 197*, or Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure ⇨ *page 197*.
After the mobile phone was connected **not all/none of the contacts** were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone. Pay attention to any requests on your mobile phone when connecting via Bluetooth.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are restricted or if individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case if the mobile phone belongs to a business organisation.
The **MESSAGES** menu is not available.	Check whether your mobile phone has the option Show messages and make sure that this option is activated.
Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging procedure is interrupted.	Check that the Audi phone box's wireless charging function is switched on. Check that your mobile phone is Qi compatible. Check that your mobile phone is in the correct position in the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 199* and that there are no other objects in the Audi phone box.

89A012720AM

Audi connect

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Audi connect infotainment
– Audi connect vehicle control services
– Audi connect apps

WARNING

– Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see ⇨ *page 21, Notes on traffic safety*.
– Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 68*.

CAUTION

– Applies when using the embedded SIM card: With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect infotainment during the licence period. Please note that costs can be incurred if certain services are used. This applies, for example, to online radio/podcasts, additional online data or internet connections and services which use the Wi-Fi hotspot. These internet connections and services require additional paid data plans, depending on the country you are in ⇨ *page 213*. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
– Applies when using your own mobile phone's SIM card via Wi-Fi: If you use your own SIM card, all data connections for all Audi connect infotainment services will use it. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider.
– In certain cases, the data connection for the Wi-Fi hotspot is established via the SIM card of your Wi-Fi device as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, this may incur charges, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your Wi-Fi device.
– Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

Note

– The availability of the services depends on the licence period.
– Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content or availability of the services.
– The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.
– The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract. ▶

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Audi connect infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi connect infotainment services allow online information to be directly transmitted into the vehicle.

An internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, an internet connection can be established via the embedded SIM card (eSIM) or via your own mobile phone's SIM card using Wi-Fi.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and embedded SIM card

The data connection for the Audi connect infotainment services is established via an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) fitted in the vehicle. You can use Audi connect infotainment services right away.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Using your own mobile phone's SIM card via Wi-Fi

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and Wi-Fi

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, it may be possible for the MMI to use your mobile phone's SIM card to establish an internet connection via Wi-Fi ⇨ *page 209*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Establishing a Wi-Fi connection

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

The vehicle can connect to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ If necessary, activate the "Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)" or "personal hotspot" function on your mobile phone.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi**.
- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on.
- ▸ Press on the desired Wi-Fi hotspot in the list of available networks.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The vehicle is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Using the Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the internet ⇨ *page 209*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's internet connection. ▶

89A012720AM

Important: The ignition must be switched on. In some countries a data plan must be available ⇨ *page 213*.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi hotspot**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi hotspot**. The access codes for the Wi-Fi hotspot will be displayed.
- ▸ Switch your mobile device's Wi-Fi function on and connect it to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot using the access data displayed.
- ▸ Please note any system queries on your Wi-Fi device.

Your device should now have been successfully connected to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Audi connect infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Before you use certain Audi connect infotainment services for the first time, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com.

Note

- – A myAudi user must be logged in to use some of the Audi connect infotainment services.
- – Some Audi connect infotainment services must be activated via my.audi.com.
- – Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.
- – Detailed information on configuration can be found online at my.audi.com.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

You can use available services directly on the MMI. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

Weather information

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ On the home screen, press **WEATHER**.

To edit the settings: Select **WEATHER** > ⊞.

- ▸ To display the weather for a particular location, press on the location in the list.
- ▸ To display the weather for the current location, press on the location marked by the crosshairs.

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- ▸ To display the weather at the destination, press on the location marked by the chequered flag 🏁.

To add a location: Select **WEATHER** > ⊞ > **In new town** > *a location*.

To delete a location: Select **WEATHER** > ⊞ > ✎ > *one or more locations* or **Select all** > **Delete**.

Online news

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NEWS**.

Access to calendar

Important: The myAudi app must be installed and started on your mobile device. Access to the calendar must be permitted on your mobile device. You must be logged in to your myAudi account using your access data in the myAudi app and must have selected your vehicle. The Wi-Fi function must be activated on your mobile device and on the MMI and your mobile device must be connected to the MMI system's Wi-Fi hotspot ⇨ *page 212, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

You can have the calendar of your mobile device displayed on the MMI.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **CALENDAR**. ▶

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Functions on demand

Displaying purchased functions

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

With certain equipment versions in some countries you can purchase functions at any time (functions on demand) in the myAudi app using your myAudi account.

To display purchased functions in the vehicle, use one of the following methods:

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **PURCHASES**.

Note

– It may also be possible to show equipment options fitted at the factory in the purchased functions display.
– The availability and functions of the myAudi app vary from country to country.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

If a message is shown regarding a function that requires a licence, this may indicate that the function is unavailable. Check in the Purchases menu on the MMI to see if you have a licence for this function, or if the licence has expired. If necessary, you can purchase the function using functions on demand.

Audi connect apps

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect apps

You must log in as a myAudi user in the vehicle in order to use the Audi connect apps.

▸ You can create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app.
▸ Add your vehicle to your myAudi account and then verify your myAudi account using one of the available verification procedures.
▸ Add the myAudi user in your vehicle.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Apps

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect apps

Important: You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

STORE

You can search for and install apps in your vehicle.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Audi connect vehicle control services

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

You can use the Audi connect vehicle control services, for example, to view data on your vehicle or to control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use the services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of publication. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.
– Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

Note

– Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the ignition has been switched off.
– The internet connection for the Audi connect vehicle control services is established via an eSIM card. The costs for this are included in the price of the Audi connect vehicle control services. The mobile network, for example, must be available to use the services.

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com, depending on the country you are in.

▸ Specify the key user ⇨ *page 32*.
▸ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.

Note

Certain services require you to enter the 4-digit PIN which you specified on registration.

Settings

Wi-Fi

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Wi-Fi

When this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi is active and the MMI can be connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment: ▶

Wi-Fi hotspot

If this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is activated and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Wi-Fi hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following values as required:

– **Access point (SSID)**: Name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Password**: A random initial password is set on the MMI at the factory. Audi recommends you to change the initial password. Follow general guidelines on password security and ensure your password is secure. Follow the instructions given by the system.

Allow data connection via Wi-Fi

When this function is activated, mobile devices can use the internet connection on the Wi-Fi hotspot. In some countries, a data plan is required for this.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ▶

Note

The name of the *Wi-Fi hotspot* and the *Bluetooth name* are automatically matched if changes are made.

Data plans[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Data plans must be purchased for certain services ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

You can purchase data plans via my.audi.com.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 208*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

– Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
– When selling your vehicle, you should delete the vehicle in the network provider's customer portal to prevent any further purchases at your expense.

[1)] Not available in all markets.

Subject	Advice
Audi connect infotainment services: Some Audi connect infotainment services are greyed out/not available.	Before you first use some Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account. Detailed information can be found online at my.audi.com.
Wi-Fi hotspot: No Wi-Fi connection is possible.	Check whether Wi-Fi hotspot is activated on the MMI ⇨ *page 212*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Emergency call

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the relevant emergency switchboards using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help ⇨ *page 215*.

– Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third-party emergency switchboards, which may include public emergency switchboards.
– Statutory European emergency call (EU eCall) [1]. This eCall system is based on the 112 SOS number and uses public emergency switchboards.

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 217*.

WARNING

– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.
– Applies to EU eCall: Not all public emergency switchboards can receive data transmitted by the vehicle.
– When an emergency call is active, all sources of noise (i.e. warning signals such as those given by the parking aid) may be muted.

Emergency call

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use.

The EU eCall emergency call is only available within the mobile network coverage that is required by law.

The TPS emergency call is only available within the mobile network area covered by the network provider selected by Audi.

Note

– The emergency call function cannot be deactivated via the settings on the infotainment system.
– EU eCall is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.
– The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.
– The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

Functions

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

In the event of a serious accident, an eCall system is automatically activated via onboard sensors ⇨ *page 216, Automatic emergency call*. If the vehicle is equipped with the TPS emergency call system, but the TPS emergency call is not available, the EU eCall is triggered automatically.

The EU eCall can also be triggered manually if needed. For instructions on how to activate the system manually, please refer to ⇨ *page 216, Manual emergency call*. ▶

[1] "EU eCall" in the following description refers also to emergency call systems required by law in non-EU countries, where the technical implementation corresponds to EU eCall.

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically ⇨ *page 216*.

When a TPS emergency call is placed automatically, information required to alert the emergency services may also be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Fig. 144 Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

Manual emergency call

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Lightly press the cover ① to open it.
- ▸ Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes. The emergency call will be placed.
- ▸ If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED lights up permanently. The emergency call will be cancelled.

Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED in the emergency call button ② will flash. The emergency call will be placed. The emergency call cannot be cancelled.

Meaning of LEDs

– **Green** – The emergency call function is available.

– **Red** – A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop. Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function ⇨ *page 216*.

– **Off** – The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

Warnings

In the event of a critical emergency call system failure, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to ⇨ *page 216, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇨ *page 216, Driver messages*.

Applies to EU eCall: In the event of a critical system failure which would cause the onboard emergency call system to be out of action, the vehicle occupants receive the following warning ⇨ *page 216, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇨ *page 216, Driver messages*.

Note

If the emergency call is cut off due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Emergency call function: fault. Function partially available. Please contact workshop

You can make an emergency call if the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, but not all of the functions may be available. For example, you may not be able to make a voice call to the emergency call centre. However, it may be possible for the system to transfer data. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

Online roadside assistance call

Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

A call to the online roadside assistance service[1] is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Making an online roadside assistance call

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

Making an online roadside assistance call

- Press the button. The LED in the button will light up in yellow. The online roadside assistance call will be placed.

Cancelling an online roadside assistance call

- Press the at the front of the headliner.

Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred. You can then choose between an online roadside assistance call or an emergency call.

Note

If the roadside assistance call is interrupted due to a poor connection, the call must be started again.

Information on data processing

EU eCall

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function (EU eCall)

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and Council and, in particular, must be necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the person affected as set out in Article 6 Paragraph 1 Subparagraph d of Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling eCall emergency calls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Data types and their recipients

The EU eCall system may only collect and process the following data: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger car or light goods vehicle), type of vehicle power (petrol/diesel/CNG/electric/hydrogen), the last three locations of the vehicle and direction of travel, log file of automatic system activation and its time stamp. Further data: version and ID of log file, number of vehicle occupants, location credibility.

The recipients of data processed in association with the EU eCall are the relevant Public Safety Answering Points (PSAP) designated by the corresponding national authorities, under whose sovereignty they are situated, to answer and process eCalls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Form of data processing

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data stored in the system memory are not accessible outside the system before an emergency call is placed.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and cannot be tracked continuously during normal operation.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data are automatically and continuously erased from the internal system memory.

The vehicle location data are continuously overwritten in the internal system memory to ensure that not more than three current locations, which are required for normal system operation, are available. ▶

[1] The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

The activity log of the EU eCall system is stored only for as long as is necessary to fulfil the purpose of handling the eCall emergency call and, in any case, not more than 13 hours after the time at which the eCall emergency call was placed.

Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Regulation (EU) 2016/679. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Regulation, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact address for queries about access rights:

AUDI AG
DSGVO-Anfrage
Auto-Union-Straße 1
85057 Ingolstadt
GERMANY

Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit

TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance

Applies to: vehicles with EU eCall in conjunction with Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call) or online roadside assistance

For a description, please refer to ⇨ *page 215* for operation, ⇨ *page 215* for functions and ⇨ *page 217* for online roadside assistance.

Any processing of personal data through the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance systems must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2).

The fulfilment of the contract for TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance forms the legal basis for the use of the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance and for the processing of data by the system/services.

The TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems may process personal data only by express consent of the data subject (the vehicle keeper).

For information on modalities for data processing through the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data, refer to:

– Modalities ⇨ *page 218*
– Further information can be found online at your regional Audi site, which can be reached via www.audi.com/en/privacy-audi-connect.html, or on the MMI by selecting the following from the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

The keeper of a vehicle which is equipped with TPS emergency call system in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system instead of the TPS emergency call system. To deactivate/reactivate the TPS emergency call system, please contact an Audi dealership.

Note

The deactivation/reactivation of the TPS emergency call system at an Audi dealership is subject to a fee.

Navigation

Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

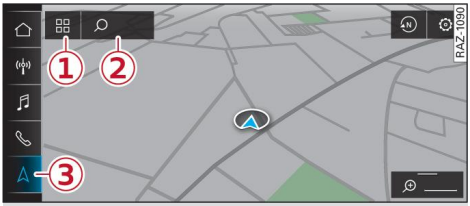


Fig. 145 Route guidance not started

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

Calling up the navigation menu

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.

The map is displayed after the navigation system is called up for the first time.

Calling up the navigation menu via the multi-function steering wheel

▸ Select the navigation tab in the instrument cluster.

▸ To display the navigation menu when route guidance has been started, select the following in the instrument cluster: ☰ button > **Map**.

The following functions are available on the MMI:

① Select a destination ⇨ *page 221*.

② Search for navigation destinations ⇨ *page 220*.

③ **To switch between the map and menu**: Press ⩓ repeatedly until the desired function is shown.

For further information on the map please refer to ⇨ *page 225, How to use the map*.

WARNING

– Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 21, Notes on traffic safety*.

– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

– Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.

– Road names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI may be different from the actual names in exceptional cases.

– Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

– Applies to vehicles with Audi connect infotainment: Further services may be available depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

– Information is also provided in the head-up display*.

myAudi navigation

Applies to: vehicles with myAudi navigation

The MMI's navigation system works seamlessly together with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favourites, last destinations) are synchronised via your myAudi account. All the important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

So that the destinations are loaded automatically in the vehicle, Audi recommends logging on in the vehicle with a myAudi account ⇨ *page 31*. ▶

myAudi navigation functions:

– You can send destinations and tours to the vehicle from the myAudi app ⇨ *page 222*.
– Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued on the MMI.
– Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue an active MMI route guidance procedure in the myAudi app to navigate you to the destination after you leave the vehicle.

Note

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Entering a destination

Searching for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Various search options may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination with the internet search.

You can use the hybrid search function to enter navigation destination details in any order (e.g. Forest Road 20 London). You can search for special destinations or contacts in the same way to help you navigate to the desired destination.

Calling up the menu

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > 🔍.

Internet search[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and internet search

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*.

▸ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field.
▸ The search engine provider displays suggestions 🔍 to narrow the search.
▸ Press on any suitable suggestions until the desired destination is shown in the results list. If necessary, swipe upwards/downwards with one finger until the suggestions 🔍 or destinations 📍 appear.
▸ Press on the desired destination 📍. Route guidance will be started.
▸ Press ⓘ to call up the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 222*.

Hybrid search

When the G symbol is shown on the MMI, the hybrid search function is switched off.

▸ To switch the hybrid search function on, press and hold the coloured G symbol.

Important: The hybrid search function must be switched on.

▸ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field ⇨ *page 25, Text entry*.
▸ Press the desired destination in the results list. Route guidance will be started.
▸ Press ⓘ to call up the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 222*.

Online points of interest

▸ **To find a special destination**: Enter the name of the special destination.
▸ Select: *the symbol for a special destination category* (e.g. 🍴) > *a special destination*, or
▸ To display all categories and search for a special destination, select: ••• > *a category* (e.g. Restaurant) > *a special destination*.

1) Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

In the charging station category, you can use the filter function to filter the results by charging capacity, for example.

Changing the search area

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .
- To change the search area, press / / repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

Note

– The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently driven.
– The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. You may be able to have alternative routes displayed ⇨ *page 227*.
– If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. Check the spelling of the term you searched for or check the search area ⇨ *page 221*.
– Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇨ *page 232*.
– The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.

Selecting a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Fig. 146 Menu: Selecting a destination

Calling up the menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- When the map is displayed, press ① ⇨ *page 219, Fig. 145*.

The following functions are available:

① **Last destinations** 221
② **Favourites** 222
③ **Contacts** 222
④ **Received destinations and tours** . . 222

Loading the last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The destinations and tours you have most recently used can be loaded as the new navigation destination.

As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically stored in your most recent destinations. The destinations you have recently used are indicated by the symbol.

If you are using myAudi navigation, your recent destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 219*.

Calling up the last destination

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > () > **Last destinations** > *a destination* > **Start**.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > button > **Last destinations** > *a destination*.

Deleting recent destinations

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > () > **Last destinations** > > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Note

The last tour will be deleted automatically from the list of recent destinations if you start route guidance to a new destination after cancelling the tour.

Using a favourite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations and your home/business address in your favourites.

Important: At least one favourite must have already been stored ⇨ *page 227*.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favourites** > *a destination*.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > ☰ button > **Favourites** > *a destination*.

Selecting a contact as a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can navigate to your contacts.

Important: An address must be available for a contact.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts** > *a contact*.
- Press on an address belonging to the contact.
- Press on a suggested address. The **Details** menu will be displayed.

Note

– If a directory contact is greyed out, an address has not been added for the contact.
– Navigation to geographical coordinates for a contact is not possible.

Loading received destinations and tours

Applies to: vehicles with myAudi navigation

You can search for destinations or tours in the myAudi app and send them to the vehicle.

Important: The MMI and the mobile device must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect* and you must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device.

- Send a destination/a tour to the vehicle from the myAudi app.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Received destinations and tours**.
- Make sure that you are logged in to the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destinations and tours will be loaded automatically.
- **To navigate to a destination**: Press a destination.
- **To delete destinations**: Select ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Note

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Destination details

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

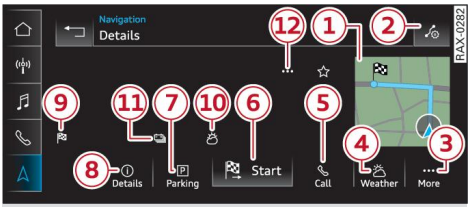


Fig. 147 Details

The functions available depend on the vehicle's equipment and the destination selected.

① **Map preview**: To enlarge the map preview, press on the map.
② **Route criteria**: Refer to ⇨ *page 232*.
③ **More**: Additional functions.
④ **Weather**: Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. Also refer to ⇨ *page 210*.
⑤ **Call**: Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 197*. The call is made to the phone number which is stored for the destination.
⑥ **Start**: To start navigating to the destination shown. The map will be displayed ⇨ *page 225*.

▶

⑦ **Park**: Press **Park** to search for a car park at the destination. You can use the car park as the destination or stopover.

⑧ **Details**: Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*.

⑨ **Display showing distance/driving time to destination**

⑩ **Weather at destination**: Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*.

⑪ **Display showing charge level at destination**

⑫ **Advanced charging station settings**: You can alter the settings to prefer/avoid a particular charging station provider or to avoid specific individual charging stations. These settings are taken into account in the e-tron route planner and can be deleted in the navigation settings ⇨ *page 233*.

Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

Calling up the map

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

Setting a convenient map scale

- Select: ⊕/⊖ > *a scale*.

Marking a destination

- Press on a location on the map and hold it until a marking or the address of the selected destination is shown.

Using map content (e.g. special destination) as a destination

Important: Map content must be displayed ⇨ *page 231*.

- Press on a location on the map (e.g. 🍴).

Setting the destination

- Select: 🏁 > **Start**.

Stopovers and tour plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter further destinations while route guidance is active.

Entering a stopover

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Enter a destination ⇨ *page 220*.

Displaying stopovers/tour plan

All destinations are listed in the tour plan.

- On the map legend menu, press 🏁 ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

Editing stopovers

- On the map legend menu, press 🏁 ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.
- **To add a stopover**: Select **Add destination** > *a destination* > **Add**.
- **To move a stopover**: Press ✎. Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.
- **To delete a stopover**: Select ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

e-tron route planner

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and e-tron route planner

The MMI includes charging stations along the route if the destination cannot be reached with the current battery charge level.

Important: The **e-tron route planner** must be activated ⇨ *page 231*.

Entering a destination with the e-tron route planner

- Enter a destination.

If a destination is out of range, the fastest route including stopovers for charging is started automatically.

- To display the route, press 🏁 in the side menu on the map ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

If the current charge level is not sufficient to reach the destination, a new route will be ▶

89A012720AM

calculated automatically and charging stations along the route will be added as stopovers. A notification is shown after a new route has been calculated.

You can view and change the newly calculated route in the tour plan ⇨ *page 223*. If you delete a charging station that was added automatically, this destination will be temporarily blocked for the current route. The charging stops and the route will be recalculated.

The following information may be shown for the destination: the estimated time of arrival at the destination, the estimated battery charge level upon arrival and after the charging cycle ⇨, the suggested charging time and the distance from the current location.

Note

– The estimated arrival time at the destination includes the suggested time for charging at the stopovers.
– The e-tron route planner always calculates the fastest route, taking into consideration the charging times at various charging stations. A route with several charging stops may therefore be faster than one with fewer charging stops.

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active and the map must be displayed.

▸ Applies to MMI: Press ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.
▸ On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > button > **Stop route guidance**.

Map

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Fig. 148 Active route guidance

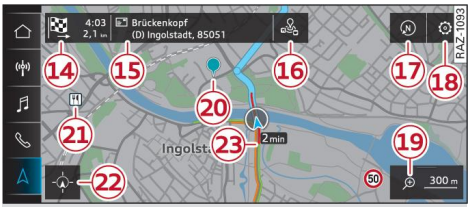


Fig. 149 Marked object on map

Calling up the map

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
▸ Press to show the map (if necessary).

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on a function (e.g. Alternative routes) to display further options.

1. Select a destination ⇨ *page 221*
2. Enter a destination ⇨ *page 220*
3. Stop route guidance ⇨ *page 224*
4. Current route
5. Request spoken cue
6. Alternative routes ⇨ *page 227*
7. Display active destinations/stopovers/tour plan ⇨ *page 223*. The distance to the next destination in the tour plan is displayed along with the estimated time of arrival.
8. Online traffic information ⇨ *page 229*
9. Altitude

⑩ Display of the maximum speed limit[1] in towns, on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads
⑪ Current vehicle position
⑫ Route information ⇨ *page 233*
⑬ Name of the street you are on
⑭ Start route guidance for a marked object on the map ⇨ *page 223, Setting a destination from the map*
⑮ Display details for the destination ⇨ *page 222*
⑯ Search in immediate vicinity ⇨ *page 220*
⑰ Set map orientation. Also refer to ⇨ *page 231*.
⑱ Settings ⇨ *page 231*
⑲ Set map scale. Press on the magnifying glass displayed on the map to activate/deactivate the automatic zoom ⇨ *page 231*. The symbol appears when the function is activated.
⑳ Marked destination ⇨ *page 223, Setting a destination from the map*
㉑ Map content (special destinations, favourites). If several different types of map content are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press on ⇨ *Fig. 149*. Press on a special destination from the list.
㉒ Centre map to current vehicle position
㉓ Traffic information and estimated delay on the route
– **Green**: no obstructions
– **Orange**: slow-moving traffic
– **Red**: traffic jams/obstructions

Further possible symbols on the map

Symbol	Description
	Home address ⇨ *page 227, Favourites*
	Business address ⇨ *page 227, Favourites*
	Favourites ⇨ *page 227*
	Shows the current destination

Traffic information

– **Coloured warning symbols**: There is an upcoming traffic obstruction or hazard alert on your route.
– **Greyed out warning symbols**: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.
– All traffic jams or other obstructions are marked with a coloured warning symbol on the map when route guidance is not active.
– **Warning symbols with arrow**: Traffic obstructions that you have avoided, e.g. .

How to use the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the gestures described below to operate the map ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

Moving the map

▸ Swipe in the desired direction with one finger.

Moving the map quickly

▸ Swipe in the desired direction with one finger and release the map while doing so.

Zooming in on the map

▸ Move two fingers apart on the map, or
▸ Double tap the map with your finger.

Zooming out on the map

▸ Move two fingers together on the map, or
▸ Double tap the map with two fingers.

Turning the map

▸ Turn the map with two fingers.

Tilting the map

▸ Swipe up/down with two fingers. ▶

[1] This function is not available in all countries and is only available for vehicles without camera-based traffic sign recognition.

Note

Some of these methods may not be available on every touch display or in every menu.

Navigation view when route guidance is started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit

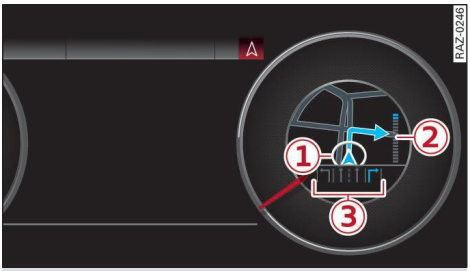


Fig. 150 Standard view in instrument cluster: Turn-off with route guidance started

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇨ *page 220*.

The following information is displayed in the driver information system (if available):

① Current vehicle position

② A bar graph appears when you approach a turn-off. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point. If no turn-off is imminent, the right-hand speedometer shows the remaining distance to the destination/stopover, the estimated arrival time and a direction arrow for the upcoming manoeuvre. If there is no upcoming manoeuvre, the distance to the next manoeuvre is displayed.

③ Lane recommendation

Predictive route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and predictive route guidance

Your MMI system can memorise routes that you frequently follow and suggest them based on your vehicle's current location (e.g. the daily route to your workplace and back).

When this function is activated , the MMI records routes you have driven (even if you do not use the navigation system).

Even if route guidance is not started, your MMI system can check the traffic situation and show possible traffic disruptions along the route you will probably take.

Calling up personal routes

Important: The predictive route guidance function must be switched on ⇨ *page 233*. Route guidance is not active. A notification will be displayed.

▸ The MMI will suggest up to three routes. Select one of the suggestions. Route guidance will be started.

Optimised routes

A notification is displayed on the MMI if there are any larger traffic disruptions, irrespective of which menu is selected. If the MMI has calculated an optimised route, you can use this.

▸ Press on the notification.

Your personal routes are no longer recorded as soon as you switch off the predictive route guidance function. Routes which have already been recorded remain stored.

Deleting personal routes

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Predictive route guidance** > **Delete recordings from the last 24 hours** or **Delete all personal routes and destinations**.

Note

If the predictive route guidance function is switched off and you press 🏁, the settings for the predictive route guidance function will be displayed ⇨ *page 233*.

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

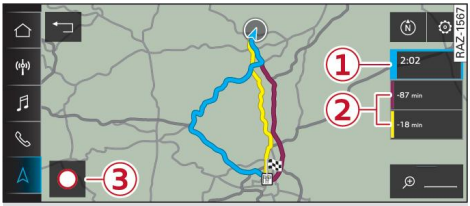


Fig. 151 Alternative routes in the overview map

Calling up alternative routes

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇨ *page 220* and the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 225*.

▸ On the map legend menu, press ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

① Current route

The distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed for the current route.

② Alternative route

The difference in time compared with the currently selected route is displayed.

③ Exclude route

You can exclude an upcoming section of the current route for a specific distance to avoid, for example, an upcoming road or tunnel closure. The navigation system will automatically calculate an alternative route and the length of the excluded section. The route you entered will only be excluded in the current route guidance; if required, you will need to re-enter the route you wish to avoid. If you exclude a route section, this section will be hatched in red and white on the map.

▸ **To exclude a route**: Press ③ ⇨ *Fig. 151*.
▸ **To cancel the route exclusion**: Press ⃠.

Displaying an alternative route in the foreground

▸ Press on ⓘ in the corresponding information window, or
▸ Press and hold the information window for the corresponding alternative route (e.g. ②) ⇨ *Fig. 151*).

Selecting a route

▸ Press on the information window for the corresponding route (e.g. ②).

Further functions

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations and your home/business address in your favourites.

Calling up favourites

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favourites**.

If you are using myAudi navigation, your favourites will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 219*.

Storing favourites

▸ Press ☆ in the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 222, Fig. 147*.

Storing home/business address

▸ Press **Home address/Business address**. When you call this menu up for the first time, you will be asked to set the corresponding address.
▸ Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**.

Editing home/business address

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. Your home address or business address must have already been stored.

▸ Press **Home address/Business address** until the **Options** menu is displayed.
▸ Select: **Change address** > *enter a destination* > (**Set as destination**) or (*complete the address*) > **OK**.

Editing favourites

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

▸ **To use a favourite as the destination**: Press a favourite. ▶

- **To delete a favourite**: In the **Details** menu, press ★ ⇨ *page 222, Fig. 147* or select the following: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).
- **To move a favourite**: Press ✎. Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Note

– If you delete the home/business address, only the address is deleted. The entry in the favourites is still displayed.
– When moving favourites, please note that positions 1 and 2 are reserved for the home and business addresses.

On-street parking

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and on-street parking

You can have roadside parking spaces displayed in locations which support this feature.

Important: **Parking** must be activated in the notifications ⇨ *page 24, Notification centre*. The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. Route guidance is active, you are almost at your destination and a notification is displayed, or a point on the map is marked.

- Press on the notification, or
- Press on 🅿 on the map.
- To navigate to a parking space, press on a colour marking on the map.
- Select: 🏁 > **Start**.

Colour markings on the map indicate the probability of finding a space, depending on availability.

Colour	Description
green	high probability
orange	average probability
red	low probability

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Satellite map**[1].

For this map display, the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the standard map display ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

Note

– The satellite map[1] is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.
– Depending on the internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map[1] is activated.

Electric range

Applies to: vehicles with electric range display

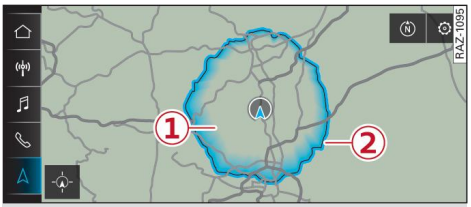


Fig. 152 Display showing electric range

The electric range function shows you the maximum distance you can drive using electric power. This takes into account factors such as road categories, speed and road elevation. ▶

[1] Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Range map**.

① Depending on the prevailing conditions, the beginning of the coloured area shows the likely minimum electric range of your vehicle.

② The maximum distance your vehicle can travel on electric power in ideal conditions is shown by the border.

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can update the map material on your navigation system. The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

– Map update via **online map update** ⇨ *page 229*.
– Importing a map update to your MMI via **USB connection** ⇨ *page 229*.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with online map update

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system in the vehicle.

The MMI uses the vehicle's position to determine regions and uses this information to provide you with updates for these regions.

Starting the update

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*.

▸ Applies to MMI: To allow automatic online map updates, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Automatic online map update**. The MMI will start the map update automatically in the background as soon as new map material is available.

You can check the status of the download process and the installation in the notification centre ⇨ *page 24*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

Due to the high volume of data, Audi recommends carrying out the map update via the USB connection ⇨ *page 229*.

Map update via USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with map update via USB connection

You can update the map material of your navigation system using the map update function.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

Downloading the update

▸ Download the map update at my.audi.com and save it on a USB stick. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Installing the update

▸ Connect the USB stick to the USB interface with charging function ⇨ *page 242*.
▸ Call up the notification in the notification centre ⇨ *page 24* and press on the notification.
▸ Press **Next**. The status of the installation will be shown on the display.

Traffic information

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

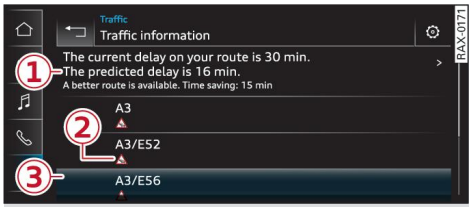


Fig. 153 Overview of traffic information

Calling up traffic information

Important: The map must be displayed ⇨ *page 225*.

▸ Press on the traffic jam sign in the map legend menu ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

Displaying traffic message details

▸ Press on the traffic message ②.
▸ Press ← or → to display the previous/next traffic message.

The following information can be displayed:

① If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, a corresponding message is shown. The estimated delay takes into account future changes to the traffic situation on the route. Press on the entry in the list ① and select the better route. Further information can be found on ⇨ *page 227*.
② A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazard location is calculated based on the current vehicle position.
③ Traffic messages are only displayed when route guidance is active. Press on the corresponding line to have details displayed.

Note

– Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically as a notification.
– Traffic information is not available in certain countries.

Traffic avoidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving compared to the current route guidance.

The following options are available:

Automatic traffic avoidance

▸ Set traffic avoidance to **automatic** ⇨ *page 232* and start route guidance.

If a better route is available, this is set automatically. The MMI does not inform you of a better route if the calculated time needed to avoid the traffic jam exceeds the estimated time lost in the traffic jam.

Manual traffic avoidance

▸ Set traffic avoidance to **manual** ⇨ *page 232* and start route guidance.

The MMI informs you if a better route is available via a notification or a message in the traffic information ① ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 153*. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

To select a better route, you have the following options:

▸ **Notifications**: Press . The better route will be used for route guidance. Alternatively, press on the notification. Press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇨ *page 227, Fig. 151*).
▸ **Message in the traffic information**: Press on the entry in the list ① ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 153*. Press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇨ *page 227, Fig. 151*).

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. The MMI traffic information must be switched on ⇨ *page 231*.

Traffic information is displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, online traffic information may also be displayed on the satellite map ⇨ *page 228*.

Note

– Every vehicle with active **online traffic information** contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on ▸

the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. You can switch off the data transmission at any time ⇨ *page 297*.

– The **online traffic information** network is not available in all countries or areas.

Hazard alerts

General information

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

The hazard alerts function allows information on hazards such as accidents, breakdowns, skidding risks or poor visibility to be detected by vehicles ahead of you and forwarded to your vehicle online.

This function is subject to certain general system limitations and may be unavailable if the vehicles ahead of you do not detect a hazard, e.g.:

– If the ASR or ABS was not triggered on a slippery road ⇨ *page 104*
– If the hazard warning lights of a broken-down vehicle were not switched on
– If the rear fog light was not switched on in poor visibility conditions
– If a vehicle's airbag was not triggered in an accident

WARNING

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the hazard alerts function. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 209*.

Switching hazard alerts on/off on the map

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Traffic** > **Traffic information**.

Switching hazard alerts on/off on the instrument cluster

You can switch the hazard alerts on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 145*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

Instrument cluster display

A hazard alert is displayed on the instrument cluster for a few seconds when it is received.

▸ To hide the hazard alerts, press the ⮌ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Displaying hazard alerts on the map

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
▸ Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

Important: **Traffic information** must be switched on ⇨ *page 231*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed on the map ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148*.

Displaying in the route information

Important: **Traffic information** and **Route information** must be switched on ⇨ *page 231*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be shown in the route information ⇨ *page 233*.

Displaying in the traffic information

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed in the traffic messages ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 153*.

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system to suit your individual needs in the instrument cluster and on the MMI display. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Calling up the settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙.

Calling up the settings via the multi-function steering wheel

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > ☰ button.

Please note that a map setting selected with the multi-function steering wheel only applies to the instrument cluster map.

Map settings

Satellite map: Refer to ⇨ *page 228*.

Range map: Refer to ⇨ *page 228*.

Traffic: You can have current traffic information displayed on the map.

– **No traffic jams/obstructions**
– **Traffic jams/obstructions**
– **Traffic information**

Map colours

– **automatic**: The colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from day to night when driving through tunnels).
– **day/night**

Map orientation

– **2D driving position/2D north**: The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.
– **3D driving position**: The current vehicle position is displayed on a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel.
– **overview**: The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover is displayed on the map. The map is set to face north.

Automatic zoom

– **On**: The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
– **Intersection**: When route guidance is active and there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
– **Off**

MMI map content/Map content: This function controls whether additional information (e.g. special destinations) is shown on the map on the centre display.

Voice guidance

Voice guidance: With the setting **Traffic**, the MMI will only give spoken cues on traffic jams/obstructions on your route.

Voice guidance during calls

Entertainment fader for navigation system: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced while a navigation cue is being played.

Route criteria

You can set which route criteria are permitted for the route calculation and which should be avoided.

Traffic avoidance: Your MMI will receive traffic information which will enable it to calculate a better route ⇨ *page 230, Traffic avoidance*

– **Automatic**
– **Manual**

Motorways

Vignette roads

Toll roads

Ferries

Motorail

Seasonally restricted

– **Automatic**: The MMI determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
– **Allow**: Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.
– **Avoid**: Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.

e-tron route planner

This function can be switched on or off as required. ▶

Prefer Audi charging

When this function is switched on, the e-tron route planner will prioritise charging stations that support **Audi charging**.

Prefer locations with multiple charging stations

When this function is switched on, the e-tron route planner will prioritise charging parks with a larger number of charging points.

Minimum charge level for charging stations

You can adjust the minimum charge level of the vehicle upon arrival at a charging station.

Minimum charge level at destination

You can adjust the minimum charge level of the vehicle upon arrival at the destination. If you select a charging station as the destination, the setting will be ignored.

Reset settings for the charge level

You can reset the settings for the minimum charge level to the default values.

Preferred charging stations

A list of your preferred charging station providers will be shown. You can delete entries.

Avoided charging stations

A list of the charging station providers and individual charging stations that you have chosen to avoid will be shown. You can delete entries.

Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information ⇨ *page 224, Fig. 148* is shown. The next manoeuvre is displayed at the bottom. Special destinations and traffic information are also displayed. Press on the route information to have a preview of the next manoeuvre displayed on the map. You can switch the following information in the route information on/off:

– **Special destinations along the route**
– **Traffic information along the route**

Use hybrid search as standard

When this option is switched on, the hybrid search is used as the standard function for searching for destinations.

Predictive route guidance

The predictive route guidance function is switched off by default in the factory settings.

When this function is activated, your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI ⇨ *page 226*.

Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system “drives” the planned route on the display without moving the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (**Set start location**) if, for example, you would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. **To simulate route guidance**: Start route guidance and press Presentation mode.

Note

You can change the volume of a spoken cue while it is being played ⇨ *page 30*.

Radio

General information

Calling up the radio menu

Fig. 154 Centre display: DAB/FM station list

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the radio may support the wavebands FM and DAB (digital radio). You can use the HD Radio receiver* to receive radio stations from the FM waveband digitally.

Depending on the station list selected, the following information may be displayed:

① **Station list**

Shows the stations that can currently be selected. The station list is updated automatically.

② **Station**

Information such as the station name is displayed if available.

③ **Programme type**

The programme type of the station is displayed if available. Depending on the country, it may be necessary to switch on the option to display **Station genres** ⇨ *page 239*.

④ **Waveband**

Shows the current waveband of the station.

In addition to the regular waveband symbols, the following information may be available depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

Symbol	Description
FM/DAB	The station provides information on its alternative internet station in the background. **Service following online** must be switched on for this ⇨ *page 239*.
WEB	The station is being received via the internet.
	The system is attempting to receive the station/podcast via the internet.
	The DAB station can no longer be received.

Note

– The DAB* waveband is not available in all countries.
– The DAB* waveband also supports the transmission standard DAB+*, where available.

Controlling the radio via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: To select a waveband, select the following from the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category*.
- Applies to MMI: To select a station, select the following from the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category* > a *station/podcast**.
- To tune to a specific frequency, follow the instructions on ⇨ *page 236, Search function*.

Controlling the radio via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: Radio mode must have been started.

- On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.
- To switch between radio and media or another source, press the ☰ button.
- To select a station/source, press the ⏮ / ⏭ button, or
- Swipe your finger up/down in area ⑦ ⇨ *page 15, Fig. 5*.
- To confirm a station/source, press OK. ▶

Note

Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Radio functions

Overview

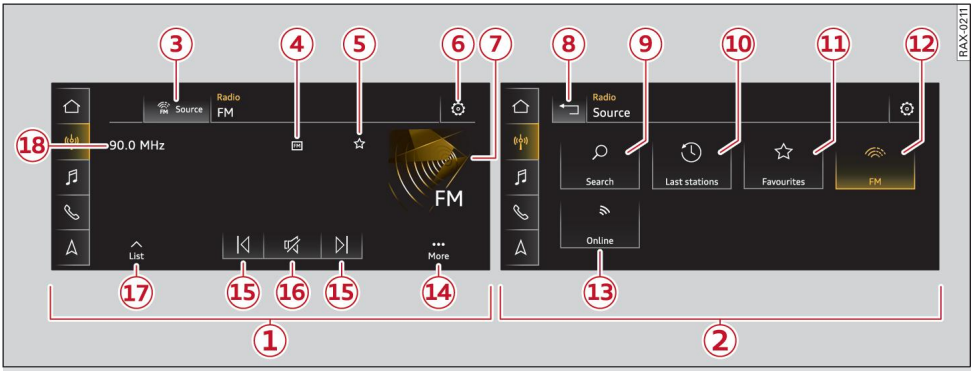


Fig. 155 Centre display: Radio functions, playback view (left-side); sources (right-side)

How to use

- Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category* > a *station/podcast**.
- Applies to MMI: To open the sources ②, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source**.

Depending on the radio station/podcast* selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

	Symbol/designation	Description
③	**Source**	To display sources in the radio menu.
④	**Waveband**	Shows the current waveband of a station.
⑤	☆/★	Favourites ⇨ *page 236*
⑥	⚙	Settings ⇨ *page 239*
⑦	**Station logo**	Depending on availability, you can switch between various views by pressing the station logo. Swipe to the right/left with one finger to switch between **Station logo**, **Cover art*** (album covers) and **Slide show*** (e.g. studio photos, current photos of artists or album covers, etc.). Also refer to ⇨ *page 239,* **Additional online data**.
⑧	⮌	To go back one level.
⑨	**Search**	Refer to ⇨ *page 236*.
⑩	**Last stations**	Refer to ⇨ *page 236*.
⑪	**Favourites**	Refer to ⇨ *page 236*.

	Symbol/designation	Description
⑫	**FM or DAB/FM**	To display stations from the **FM** waveband or the mixed **DAB/FM** station list.
⑬	**Online**	Refer to ⇨ *page 237*.
⑭	**More**	To call up options on the current station ⇨ *page 239*.
⑮	⏮/⏭	To select the previous/next station.
⑯	🔊/🔇	To mute/unmute the playback.
⑰	**List**	To display the station list ⇨ *page 234*.
⑱	**Information area**	If available, the station name and additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown, for example. Also refer to ⇨ *page 239,* **Additional online data**.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

Search function

You can use the intelligent search function to find station names, frequencies[1)], programme types (e.g. **news**), podcasts* or online radio stations*.

Calling up the search function

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Search**.

Entering search terms

You can enter several search terms together in any order.

The following information is available:

Symbol	Description
🕘	Result from the **Last stations** list
☆	Result from the **Favourites** list
📡	Result from a **Station list**
e.g. FM	Waveband of the station

Last stations

You can listen to stations from all frequencies that you have previously listened to.

Calling up last stations

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Last stations**.

Listening to last stations

▸ Press on a station.

Deleting last stations

▸ Select: ✎ > *one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Favourites

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list.

Calling up favourites via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Favourites** > *a favourite*.

Storing favourites

▸ In the playback view, press ☆ ⑤ ⇨ *page 235, Fig. 155*.

Important: A list of radio stations must be displayed ⇨ *page 234, Fig. 154*.

▸ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

▸ Press **Store as favourite**. ▶

1) This function is not available for DAB* waveband.

Editing favourites

- **To delete a favourite:** Press on ★ in the playback view, or
- In the favourites list, select: ✎ > *one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.
- **To move a favourite**: Press ✎.
- Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position.
- Press **Done**.

Radio text

Additional information on the programme (e.g. general text messages, artist, composer, track) is shown in the radio text.

Important: The selected radio station must support the radio text function.

Calling up the radio text

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > *a waveband (e.g. FM)* > *a station* > **More** > **Radio text**.

The following functions may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Displaying the most recent radio text entries

- Swipe down with one finger. Depending on the availability, the most recent radio text entries will be displayed.

Browsing through radio text entries

- Swipe up/down with one finger.

Calling up RadioText Plus information

If a radio text entry is displayed in colour, the station has provided a telephone number or a navigation destination as RadioText Plus information.

The following options are available:

Setting the destination

- Select: *a navigation destination marked in colour* > **Set as destination**.

Making a call

- Select: *a telephone number marked in colour* > **Call**.

Note

A call to a number given in radio text will be started immediately.

Online radio

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

You can use the online radio function to listen to different radio stations/podcasts from the internet.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 213*.

Calling up online radio via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online**.

The following functions are available:

Last selected

The list of most recently played stations/podcasts will be displayed.

Top stations

The most popular online radio stations will be displayed.

Filtering the list

- Select 🔍 > (*a category*) > *a station/podcast*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

- Depending on the internet connection and network load, online radio playback may be interrupted.
- It may not be possible to receive online radio if your internet connection's speed has been limited.

– Whether online radio can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– The scope of the online radio services and the way that they are displayed in the vehicle may differ from the third party service.
– Please note that some online radio stations may not be available in certain countries.
– Audi only enables you to access online radio via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

Podcasts

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

Calling up podcasts via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online** > **Podcasts**.

The following functions are available:

Listening to a podcast

▸ Select *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

Search

▸ Press .

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

Displaying podcast episodes

▸ Press **List**.

Starting/stopping podcast playback

▸ Press ▷/II.

Previous/next podcast

▸ Press ⏮/⏭.

Adjusting the play position

▸ Move the control slider to the desired position.

Displaying the online radio menu

▸ Press .

Switching to radio

▸ Press **Source**. The sources in the radio menu will be displayed.

Podcast favourites

You can store podcasts in the podcast favourites.

Important: The playback view for a podcast must be displayed.

▸ Press ☆ Ⓢ ⇨ *page 235, Fig. 155*.

Important: A list of podcasts must be displayed.
▸ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.
▸ Press on **Favourite podcast**.

Listening to a podcast favourite

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

▸ Select *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

Browsing podcast favourites

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

▸ Press 〈 or 〉.

Displaying all podcast favourites

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

▸ Press **All**.

Editing podcast favourites

▸ **To delete a podcast favourite:** Press ★ in the playback view, or
▸ In the podcast favourites, select **All** > > *one or more podcasts* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed.
▸ **To move a podcast favourite**: Select **All** > .
▸ Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position.
▸ Press **Done**.

Options and settings

Options

Important: The playback view (1) must be displayed ⇨ *page 235, Fig. 155*.

▸ Press **More** (14), or

Important: A list of radio stations/podcasts* must be displayed ⇨ *page 234, Fig. 154*.

▸ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

The following functions may be available depending on the source selected:

– **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 236*.
– **Radio text** ⇨ *page 237*.
– **Favourite podcast** ⇨ *page 238,* **Podcast favourites**.

Settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > ⚙.

The following settings may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

HD Radio (FM)

You can switch the reception of HD Radio on or off.

Traffic announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive traffic announcements from different wavebands. If DAB traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

DAB announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive announcements such as news or weather information.

Station genres

You can switch the programme type display on/off (e.g. **News**).

Disaster warning

When this function is activated, alarm announcements are shown in the notification centre ⇨ *page 24*.

Service following between related DAB stations

When this function is switched on, the tuner attempts to find an alternative reception option when the reception quality becomes weaker.

When the function is switched off, the system will not do this. The current station will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received.

Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 213*.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded, if available.

Service following online

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 213*. A station must be providing information on its alternative internet station in the background and must be marked with the symbol FM or DAB.

The radio tuner can establish a data connection and switch to an alternative station on the internet (if available) if there is a loss of reception in the FM or DAB waveband. You may be able to receive your local radio stations in all the regions of your country via the internet. This may lead to additional costs ⇨ (!). The WEB symbol denotes a station which is currently being received via the internet.

– **Automatic/Off**: Activates/deactivates the function to switch automatically to an alternative station on the internet.
– **With request**: Manual confirmation is required in order to switch to an alternative station on the internet. ▶

Preferred online radio bit rate

Depending on the radio station selected, you can set the bit rate for online radio ⇨ *page 237* and for **Service following online**.

To achieve the best possible playback sound quality, press **High**. To reduce data consumption, press **Low**.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

– If the function ⇨ *page 239,* **Traffic announcements** or ⇨ *page 239,* **DAB announcements** is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. To interrupt the announcement, press ⏻ on the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 22*.
– There may be delays when the system is switching between regular wavebands and online radio automatically.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
A station is no longer listed in the station list.	Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list ⇨ *page 236*.
Online radio: No online radio playback.	Check that a data plan has been purchased for the country in question and that it is available ⇨ *page 213*.

Media

General information

Various media sources and various options for connecting devices may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle. For example, you can play media files from a USB stick or connect mobile devices to the USB port with charging function and operate them via the MMI.

Media and format limitations: The MMI system (including the connection for the USB mass storage device) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and media files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

Restricted performance: If you experience restricted performance, reset the MMI to the factory settings ⇨ *page 254*.

Digital rights management: Please note that copyright law applies to media files.

DRM-protected files will not be played; these files are marked with the symbol.

Data storage: Never store important data on mobile devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

Loading time: The more files/folders/playlists are stored on a device, the longer it will take to load the files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the media files, use a storage medium which contains only media files, and create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album).

Metadata: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote stored locally or online ⇨ *page 247,* **Additional online data**. Nevertheless, some additional information may still not be displayed in some cases.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled mobile device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection procedure. The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 253* and the mobile device must be activated.

Connecting a mobile device

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Connect external device** > **New connection**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- ▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▸ To update the list, press.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

- ▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device.

After the mobile device has been connected successfully, it will be shown as a Bluetooth audio player in the **Connected devices** menu.

Playing media ⇨ *page 243*

Note

– Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
– You can bond several Bluetooth audio players to the MMI; however only one external device at a time can be actively connected to the MMI as a Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 255*.
– Which media functions (e.g. random playback, list view, categories, search function, ▸

options) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.
– Please note the volume control on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
– You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Multimedia connections

USB adapters

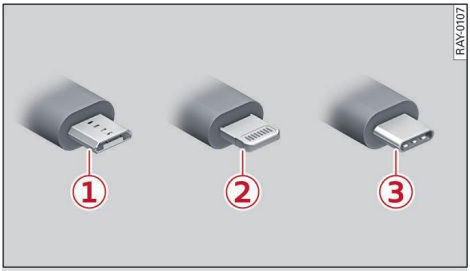


Fig. 156 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapters

You can connect your mobile devices to the MMI and simultaneously charge the battery using USB adapters connected to the USB ports with charging function.

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers:

① USB adapter for devices with micro USB connector
② USB adapter for Apple devices with Lightning connector
③ USB adapter for devices with USB-C connector

CAUTION

Please handle the USB adapters with care. Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

Note

Apple devices with dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

USB ports with charging function

You can connect your mobile devices via the USB ports in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

The USB ports are located in the front centre console and are marked with the symbol ⇠. If several USB devices are connected to the USB ports (e.g. a smartphone and a USB stick), all of the devices can be used as a playback source.

Connecting/charging a mobile device via USB adapter

▸ Connect the corresponding USB adapter to the USB port and then connect it to the mobile device (e.g. smartphone).

The battery will be charged automatically.

Mobile devices connected to the USB ports are started and operated via the MMI ⇨ *page 243*.

Disconnecting a mobile device from the USB port

▸ Unplug the USB adapter from the USB port.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– To avoid damage, please take care when unplugging the connector from the USB port.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the USB port.
– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low. ▸

Note

– Please always observe the information ⇨ *page 78*.
– When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be connected via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 242, Fig. 156* to the USB ports; this could cause performance issues.
– It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification will function properly.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Video playback via the USB ports is not supported by Apple devices or by MTP devices (e.g. smartphones).
– iPod touch/iPhone malfunctions also affect operation of the device via the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.
– Audi recommends that you use the most up-to-date iPod touch/iPhone software possible. Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information.
– iPod touch/iPhone 5 and later with Lightning connector are supported provided USB adapters are used on the USB ports.
– You can find a selection of supported devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/mp3.

Playing media

Media sources

The following media sources can be selected, depending on the vehicle's equipment:
– **USB device** ⇨ *page 242*.
– **Connect external device**: You can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 241*. Alternatively, you can connect an external device directly to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 242*.

Calling up media

Playing media files via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source*. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected. The device name may be displayed (e.g. MyPhone).
▸ Select a track from the categories in the media centre ⇨ *page 244*.

Playing media files via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: At least one media source must contain media files ⇨ *page 243*.

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.
▸ To switch between radio and media or another source, press the ☰ button.
▸ To select a media file/source, press the ⇈ / ⇊ button, or
▸ Swipe your finger up/down in area (7) ⇨ *page 15, Fig. 5*.
▸ To confirm a media file/source, press OK.

Note

– If the function ⇨ *page 239,* **Traffic announcements** or ⇨ *page 239,* **DAB announcements** is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. To interrupt the announcement, press ⏻ on the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 22*.
– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
– Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Media centre

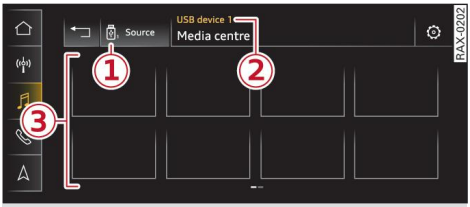


Fig. 157 Centre display: Media centre

Several categories are available in the media centre. You can search for media files across different sources. Music will still be played from the active source while you are searching on the MMI.

Calling up the media centre

▸ Applies to MMI: Select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category*.

① Source symbol

The symbol for the source you are currently using will be displayed. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected. A USB stick connected via the USB port with charging function is shown as an example.

② Device name of a source

The device name of the source you are currently using will be displayed.

③ Categories

The categories displayed in the media centre depend on the vehicle equipment, the device connected, the contents of the selected source and the connection type:

– **Last tracks played**
– **Artists**
– **Compilations**
– **Composers**
– **iTunes Radio**
– **Audiobooks**
– **Podcasts**
– **Genres**
– **Videos**
– **Tracks**
– **Albums**

Playlists

All playlists and smart playlists from the source will be displayed.

Smart playlists

– **Last tracks played**
– **Most played tracks**

Folders

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

– Cloud services and the iTunes Radio category always require an internet connection.
– Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

– Only the categories supported by the medium used are available.
– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
– If you synchronise a mobile device with cloud services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.
– Applies to iPod touch/iPhone: Please also observe the notes on the USB ports with charging function and supported devices ⇨ *page 242*.

Media functions

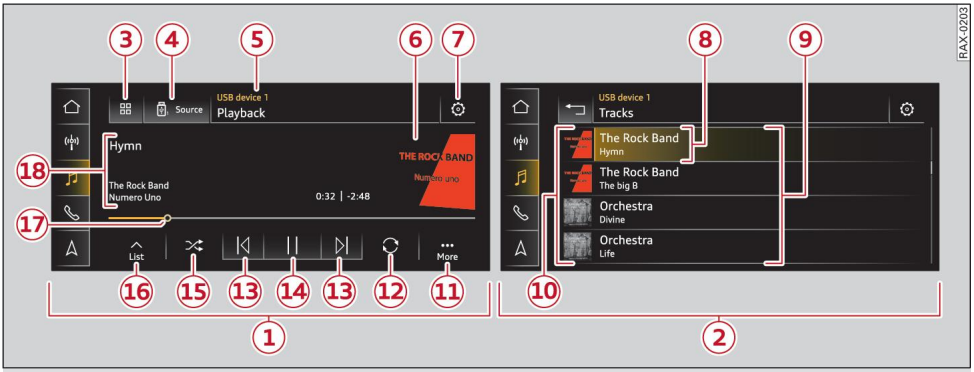


Fig. 158 Centre display: Playback view (left-side); playlist (right-side)

How to use

▸ Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category* (e.g. **Artists** > *an album*) > *a track*.

▸ To open the playlist ②, select **List** ⑯ in the playback view.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the media source selected, the following options may be available:

	Symbol/designation	Description
③	⊞	The media centre categories are displayed (depending on the active source) ⇨ *page 244*.
④	**Source**	To display sources in the media menu.
⑤	**Source/device name**	Device name of the source currently playing.
⑥	**Album cover** in playback view	Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 247*, **Additional online data**. Displays the current album cover. **To display the playlist**: Press the cover.
⑦	⚙	Settings ⇨ *page 247*
⑧	**Information on the current track**	Displays **track** and **artist**. The track currently playing is marked in colour.
⑨	**List**	**To scroll in the list**: Swipe your finger upwards/downwards.
⑩	**Album cover** in the playlist	Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 247*, **Additional online data**. Displays the current album cover.
⑪	**More**	Calling up options ⇨ *page 246*.
⑫	**Off**	**To switch between Off/Playlist/Track**: Press ⑫.
	Playlist	The tracks in the current playlist will be repeated continuously.
	Track	The current track will be repeated continuously.

	Symbol/designation	Description
⑬	⏮/⏭	**To select the previous/next track (or station/chapter)**: Press ⏮ or ⏭. **To rewind/fast forward**: To rewind/fast forward the current track, press and hold ⏭ or ⏮. **To jump to the beginning of the track**: After the track has played for 3 seconds, press ⏮.
⑭	▷/II	To start/stop the playback.
⑮	⤮	When this function is switched on, all the files in the playlist will be played in random order.
⑯	**List**	The playlist ② will be displayed.
⑰	**Play position**	The slider indicates the current playback position in the track. **To rewind/fast forward**: To rewind/fast forward the current track, move the slider to the right/left. **To change the playback position**: Press on the desired playback position.
⑱	**Information area**	Displays **track**, **artist** and **album**.

Note

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

Search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function

You can search for e.g. tracks and artists across all sources.

Calling up the search function

Important: The selected source must support the search function.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Search**.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results. Every result is marked with the symbol of a category from the media centre ⇨ *page 244*.

You can search in the following categories:

– Artists
– Albums
– Tracks
– Genres
– Videos

Options and settings

Options

Certain functions and settings may be available depending on the vehicle equipment, the selected source, the mobile device connected and the type of connection.

Important: The playback view must be displayed ① ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 158*.

▸ Press **More** ⑪.

Similar music

The track currently playing is briefly analysed (e.g. by artist, genre, mood, time) so that the system can display a smart playlist with similar tracks.

Picture format

Audi recommends using the **Auto** setting for the picture format. You will be shown a preview of the setting when you press on one of the picture format options. Press **OK** to use the picture format selected.

The following table provides an overview of the picture formats. The possible picture formats depend on the source being played or the video file. ▶

Picture format	Description
Auto	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio.
4:3, **16:9**	The picture is set to the relevant format. Select one of these options if the picture shown with **Auto** selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.
Zoom	The picture is enlarged to fill the entire display.
Original	The picture is displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with **Auto** selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.

Settings

Calling up the settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > ⚙.

The following settings may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 213*.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded, if available.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, media files with the following attributes are supported by the connection for the USB mass storage device:

Audio/video files	
Supported media	**USB ports with charging function**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 242* (e.g. iPhone, MTP players, USB mass storage devices belonging to "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" compatible with USB 2.0, USB sticks, USB MP3 players (plug-and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external USB hard drives)
File system	**USB mass storage devices**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB mass storage partitions (primary/logical*)**: 2 per USB connection
Metadata	**Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote*.
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX
Number of files	**USB mass storage devices**: max. 50000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory

Audio files		
Format	**File extension**	
MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	.mp3	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec 48 kHz sampling frequency
Windows Media Audio 9/10	.wma	
MPEG-2/-4	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	
Opus	.opus; .ogg; .oga	
FLAC	.flac	48 kHz sampling frequency
ALAC	.m4a	
Monkey's Audio	.ape	

Video files		
Format	**File extension**	
MPEG-1/-2	.mpg; .mpeg	Up to max. 15 Mbit/sec, 1920x1080 px and 30 fps
MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	
Windows Media Video 9	.wmv; .asf	
MPEG-H (H.265/HEVC)	.mp4; .mov	
VP8/VP9	.webm	
Flash Video	.flv; .f4v	

Note

– The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media sources.
– Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
– The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.
– The manufacturer will provide you with information on the “USB Device Subclass” of a USB memory device.
– Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle’s equipment.

Subject	Advice
USB ports with charging function/ Bluetooth audio player: The mobile device is not supported.	Please observe the notes in the chapter ⇨ *page 242, Multimedia connections*/⇨ *page 241, Bluetooth audio player*.
USB ports with charging function: The mobile device is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5 %). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a media source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge.

Subject	Advice
USB ports with charging function: Problems during audio playback via an iPod touch/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇨ *page 253* when you are not using a **Bluetooth audio player**.
USB ports with charging function: No audio playback possible via a connected mobile device.	Make sure that the USB mode *MTP* is selected in your mobile device's settings.
Bluetooth audio player: Problems with track display and playback.	Problems can occur if a third party music playback app is open when you are playing audio via the **Bluetooth audio player**. Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (e.g. smartphone).

89A012720AM

In-car experience

Themes

Applies to: vehicles with themes

This function enables you to use themes to customise the appearance of the infotainment system.

Using the themes preview

You can view a time-limited preview of a theme.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **THEMES** > > *a theme*.
- Press **Preview**.

Downloading a theme

To use a theme permanently, you must download the theme.

Important: You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device. You must have added your vehicle in the myAudi app. You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

- Open the myAudi app and download the desired theme, or
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **THEMES** > > *a theme*.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

Selecting a theme

Important: You must have downloaded a theme.

- Select the desired theme in the myAudi app, or
- Applies to MMI: To activate a theme, select the following on the home screen: **THEMES** > *a theme*.
- Applies to MMI: To restore the factory appearance, select the following on the home screen: **THEMES** > **No theme**.

Using as a screensaver

When shown as a screensaver, the background image is displayed without the menus.

Important: You must have activated a theme.

- Applies to MMI: Swipe to the right until the background image is displayed without the menus.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Smartphone interface

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone wirelessly* or via a cable to the MMI system via the smartphone interface. Some of the content on your smartphone is displayed in an optimised screen format and can be operated via the MMI.

Connecting a smartphone by cable

Important: The vehicle must be stationary. Your iPhone 6s or later with Lightning or USB-C connector must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 8.0 or higher.

- Connect your smartphone to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 242, Fig. 156* via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 242*.

Connecting a smartphone wirelessly

Applies to: vehicles with wireless Apple CarPlay/wireless Android Auto

Important: The vehicle must be stationary. Your iPhone 6s or later with Lightning or USB-C connector must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 11 or higher.

- To connect your smartphone wirelessly, switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your smartphone.
- Applies to Apple CarPlay: Call up the settings for Apple CarPlay on your iPhone.
- Applies to Android Auto: Make sure that wireless Android Auto is allowed in the app settings on your smartphone.
- Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on the MMI ⇨ *page 253*.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Smartphone interface** > **New connection**.
- Using the MMI, press on your smartphone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- To update the list, press ↻.

Establishing a wireless* connection/ connection by cable

- Follow any instructions given by the system.
- Please note any system queries on your smartphone.
- Applies to MMI: If you declined the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, select the following from the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Smartphone interface** > *a smartphone*.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Note

- The functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:
  - The brand of your smartphone
  - The operating system version of your smartphone
  - The software version of the app in use
  - The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
  - Your mobile network/service provider
  - The individual settings on your smartphone
- One or several of the factors listed above can result in your smartphone being incompatible with the smartphone interface. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. For further information and support, please refer to the operating manual of your smartphone or contact its manufacturer.
- Please note that you must connect your smartphone to the USB port with charging function in the front cabin to use the smartphone interface. ▶

– Wireless Apple CarPlay*/wireless Android Auto* is not available in all countries.
– Wireless Apple CarPlay*/wireless Android Auto* is possible on vehicles without navigation system/without a vehicle position that can be analysed (GPS data) only if the embedded SIM card in the vehicle is logged in to the mobile network ⇨ *page 209*.
– If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system ⇨ *page 29*.
– The MMI uses the menu language set on your smartphone.
– Some of the MMI functions are not available when a smartphone interface connection is active.
– You cannot use mobile devices via Bluetooth when the smartphone interface is active.
– Whether the smartphone interface can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Smartphone interface cannot be called up.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB adapter and use a different one if necessary. Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country.
	Android Auto: Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI fails.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 242*.
	Apple CarPlay: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone.
	Android Auto: Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars.
Wireless connection between smartphone and MMI fails.	**Apple CarPlay**: Call up the settings for Bluetooth and Apple CarPlay on your iPhone. Delete your vehicle.
	Android Auto: Call up the settings for Bluetooth on your smartphone. Delete your vehicle. Delete your vehicle in the Android Auto app as well.
	Open the Connected devices menu ⇨ *page 255*. Delete your smartphone in the menu items Telephone 1 and Smartphone interface. Repeat the connection procedure. Restart the MMI ⇨ *page 21*. Restart your smartphone. Call up the Wi-Fi settings on your smartphone. Check whether your smartphone has connected to the vehicle's 5 GHz Wi-Fi. Try connecting to the 5 GHz Wi-Fi manually.
Smartphone is not detected automatically.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 242*. Check that the requirements for connecting a smartphone have been met.

Further settings
System settings

Introduction

This chapter describes general settings. Information on specific settings can be found in the relevant chapter. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Date and time

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Available settings:

– **Set date and time automatically**
– **Date**
– **Time**
– **Date format**
– **Time format**
– **Automatic time zone**
– **Time zone**

Measurement units

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Measurement units**.

Available settings:

– **Speed**
– **Distance**
– **Temperature**
– **Capacity**
– **Pressure**
– **Consumption (electric motor)**

Language and keyboard

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard**.

Language

You can change the language of the display, the navigation cues and the speech dialogue system.

Keyboard

Refer to ⇨ *page 25*.

Sound

Important: An audio source must be active.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Sound**.

Available settings:

– **Treble**
– **Bass**
– **Balance/fader**
– **Speed-dependent volume control**
– **Subwoofer**
– **Surround level**
– **Focus**
– **Panorama**

Announcements and sounds

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Announcements & sounds**.

Available settings:

– **Volume of spoken cues**

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Note

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when you switch on the MMI.

Bluetooth

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Bluetooth**.

Bluetooth

You can set whether the MMI system is visible to other Bluetooth devices. To connect a new Bluetooth device, the **Visible** setting must be selected. If **Invisible** is selected, a Bluetooth connection can only be established to devices which ▶

89A012720AM

have already been paired. You cannot connect a Bluetooth device if **off** is selected.

Bluetooth audio player

When this function is switched on, the profile will be connected automatically as soon as your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

Bluetooth name

The Bluetooth name of the MMI is displayed and can be changed.

Note

The name of the *Wi-Fi hotspot* and the *Bluetooth name* are automatically matched if changes are made.

Factory settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Restore factory settings**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The factory settings will be restored. The system will be restarted. This can take some time.

Note

Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

Software update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with software update

You can update the software in your vehicle.

The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:
– Software update[1] ⇨ *page 254*.
– Map material update for the navigation system ⇨ *page 229*.
– Software updates at your Audi dealership. This may lead to additional costs.

WARNING

– Only perform the installation when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
– In the event of installation errors, please contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Software update[1]

Applies to: vehicles with software update

You can update the software directly in the vehicle via a software update.

Downloading a software update

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 208, Audi connect*. You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the vehicle. In some countries, the key user must give their consent in the myAudi app so that software updates are downloaded to the vehicle.

Software updates are downloaded automatically without prior notification. If necessary, the download is resumed automatically when the ignition is switched back on. An online system update notification is shown on the centre display when the download is complete.

Installing a software update

Important: You must have downloaded a software update and a notification must be shown on the centre display.

▸ Stop the vehicle safely.
▸ Switch the parking lights off if necessary.
▸ Switch the hazard warning lights off if necessary.
▸ Make sure that the 12-volt vehicle battery is charged.
▸ Make sure that the high-voltage battery is not being charged and that there is not a charging connector plugged into the charging socket.
▸ Press on the notification, or
▸ Call up the notification in the notification centre ⇨ *page 24* and press on the notification. ▶

[1] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.
▸ To start the software update, leave the vehicle and lock it.

The MMI will start the installation. A notification is shown when the software update is complete.

WARNING

To ensure that the update is carried out correctly, it is not possible to switch the ignition on while the update is installing.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with software update

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Software update: incomplete. Warning! Vehicle functions limited

If the warning lamp comes on, an error occurred while the software update was being installed. The additional warning lamps and driver messages indicate the affected system. Contact a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Connected devices

Displaying connected devices

Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices**.

Possible menu items:

– **Telephone 1**
– **Telephone 2**
– **Audio player**
– **Wi-Fi hotspot**
– **Headset**

Smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI ⇨ *page 251*.

myAudi app

This function is available when the corresponding Audi app is installed and running on your mobile device and the mobile device is connected to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 208*.

Managing connected devices

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇨ *page 255*.

Connecting a device

Important: The Bluetooth discoverability option must be activated for the MMI system ⇨ *page 253* and the mobile device.

▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
▸ To search for and connect your mobile device, press on **New connection** ⇨ *page 197*.

Selecting a connected device

▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of connected devices. The connection will be established.

Disconnecting a device

▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
▸ Press on the connected mobile device. The selected mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI.

Deleting a device

▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
▸ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.
▸ Press **Delete**.

If a device is listed more than once, it will be deleted accordingly from all of the menu items.

Note

Audi recommends connecting no more than six devices. You should delete any devices you no longer need at regular intervals.

Further options

Additional options may be available depending on the function selected.

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇨ *page 255*.

- ▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Bluetooth profiles

You can switch the profiles on/off individually on the MMI as desired.

Favourite

Activate this function to set a paired mobile phone as the standard phone on the MMI.

The standard phone will be prioritised over other Bluetooth devices and connected as soon as it is within range. This requires that the Bluetooth function of both the mobile phone and the MMI be switched on.

Legal information

General information

Software licence information can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Multi Media Interface

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General**.

Licence periods

Version information

Legal information

Possible options:

– **Software information**
– **About Audi connect**

Smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

Important: A smartphone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 251*.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Smartphone interface**.
- ▸ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Press **Legal information**.

Instrument cluster

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab ⇨ *page 15*.
- ▸ Press the ☰ button on the multi-function steering wheel until the display appears.

Possible options:

– **Engine/motor code**
– **Software information**
– **Version information**

Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and the head-up display must be switched on.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Head-up display** > **Display contents** > **Show licence text on head-up display**.

Audi connect apps

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect apps

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Audi connect settings**. ▶

You will find legal information, software information, licence information and version information in the submenus.

Checking and topping up fluids

Front compartment

General information

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the front compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the front compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The front compartment of any vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. ⇨ ⚠

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Hot components! Rotating parts!
	Hot surfaces. The heat generated during operation can lead to hot surfaces on individual components. Do not touch components – risk of burns!
	Fan can switch on at any time!
	High voltage! The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted.
	Hot coolant – risk of scalding!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle's front compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

– Always exercise extreme caution when working in the front compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury.
– Do not perform any work in the front compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
– If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop. Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

– Switch off the ignition.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Keep children away from the front compartment.
– Never spill fluids in the front compartment.
– Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.
– Never touch the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and may switch on suddenly even if the ignition is switched off.
– To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the front compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
– The cap on the coolant expansion tank must not be opened if the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure.
– Protect your face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
– Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– Do not expose yourself to chemical substances for any longer than necessary.

⚠ WARNING

The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. A warning sticker is attached to ▶

the different parts of the high-voltage system. This is intended to warn you of the high voltage.
– Even when the ignition is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.
– Never perform work on the orange-coloured high-voltage cables or the high-voltage components yourself. Work on the high-voltage system may only be performed by authorised workshops that have been approved for this type of work.

CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. Failure to do so will cause serious malfunctions or damage.

For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

Opening/closing the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

Fig. 159 ① Footwell: Release lever. ② Front compartment: Lever for releasing bonnet

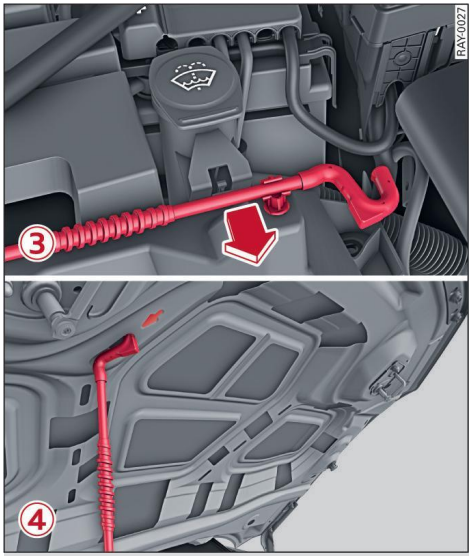


Fig. 160 ③ Front compartment: Bonnet prop in retainer. ④ Bonnet prop in bonnet

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 258, General information*.

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

Opening the bonnet

- With the door open, pull the lever (1) [1] under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- Lift the bonnet slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the lever under the bonnet (2) in the direction indicated by the arrow. This will release the arrester hooks.
- Open the bonnet.
- Pull the bonnet prop out of the retainer (3) and insert it in the bonnet (4).

Closing the bonnet

- Lift the bonnet slightly.
- Unhook the bonnet prop from the opening (4) and press it into the retainer (3).

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Warning! Bonnet not locked. Stop vehicle and check bonnet lock

The bonnet lock is not correctly engaged. Stop your vehicle without delay and close the bonnet.

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the front compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

[1] Symbol not available in all countries.

Front compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

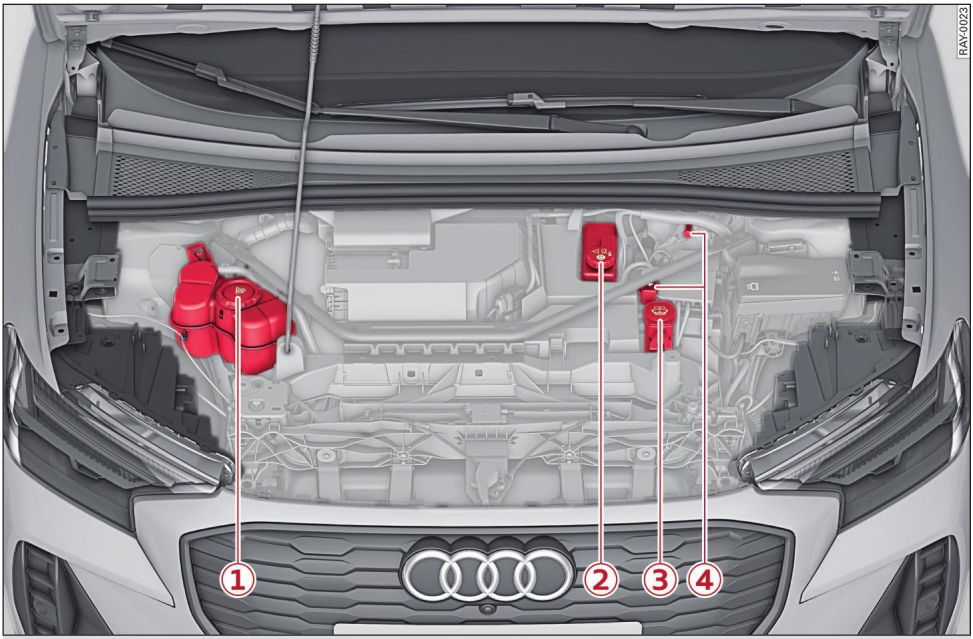


Fig. 161 Layout (example)

Please refer to the safety information ⇨*page 258, General information*.

1. Coolant expansion tank (⇨) ⇨*page 262*
2. Brake fluid reservoir (⇨) ⇨*page 263*
3. Windscreen washer container (⇨) ⇨*page 268*
4. Charging terminals: under a cover (+); hexagon head (–) ⇨*page 267, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*, ⇨*page 288, Jump-starting*

The coolant expansion tank and the brake fluid reservoir may be on the other side of the vehicle, depending on the export version.

Cooling system

Coolant

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp . However, it is advisable to check it occasionally.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Switch off power unit and check coolant level. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨*page 262*.

Electric drive overheating. Safely stop vehicle and check coolant

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. ▶

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. When topping up, use only the type of coolant additive specified below, in combination with distilled water.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	TL 774 L

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause damage to the cooling system.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40 % max. 45 %	min. -25 °C (-13 °F)
Cold regions	min. 50 % max. 55 %	max. -40 °C (-40 °F)

CAUTION

- Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- To prevent damage to the electric motor and the high-voltage battery, do not use a different type of coolant additive if G12evo is not available. In this case use only distilled water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.
- If the coolant system has been topped up with a coolant additive other than the approved type (G12evo), you can continue driving initially; however you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop without delay and have the coolant changed – risk of damage to the electric motor and high-voltage battery!
- The cooling system must be refilled by a qualified workshop only – risk of damage to the electric motor and high-voltage battery! You can obtain important information about recommended anti-freeze additives from your qualified workshop.

Checking the coolant level

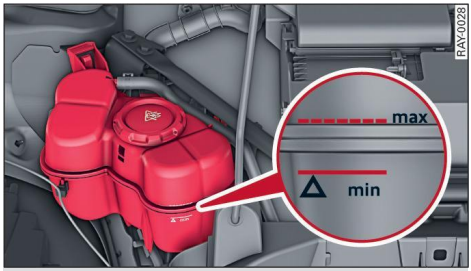


Fig. 162 Front compartment: Coolant expansion tank (example)

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 258, General information*.

Checking the coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 259*.
- ▸ Check the coolant level in the expansion tank ⇨ *page 261, Fig. 161* using the external markings ⇨ *Fig. 162* as a guide. When the coolant is cold, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX marks. When the coolant is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark.

Topping up the coolant

Please refer to ⇨ ⚠.

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇨ (!).

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of distilled water and the specified coolant additive. Only use non-distilled water in an emergency. Always use clean water.

- ▸ Allow the cooling system to cool down.
- ▸ Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth. ▶

- ▸ Carefully unscrew the cap ⇨ *Fig. 162* anti-clockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇨ *page 262* up to the MAX mark.
- ▸ You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- ▸ Screw the cap on again tightly in the clockwise direction.

⚠ WARNING

- – The front compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before carrying out any work in the front compartment, switch off the ignition and allow the cooling system to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇨ *page 258, General information*.
- – Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the front compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
- – If the warning lamp appears, coolant must not be added – risk of fire.
- – The coolant and coolant additives can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.

! CAUTION

Coolant loss which leads to the coolant expansion tank being virtually empty normally indicates significant leaks in the cooling system which could result in further damage.

- – Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system – risk of damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.
- – If there is coolant remaining in the tank, add more coolant. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. If the warning lamp comes on again, stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.
- – If you have to add a large quantity of coolant (approx. 0.5 ltr.), you should check the coolant level again after 24 hours. If the coolant level has dropped again, you should seek professional assistance.
- – If you have to add small quantities of coolant (approx. 0.25 ltr.) twice within a period of two months, you should drive to a qualified workshop – risk of damage!
- – If too much coolant has been added to the coolant expansion tank, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the coolant level corrected.
- – If you use non-distilled water, the chemicals that it contains can cause serious corrosion damage to the cooling system – risk of vehicle damage!
- – If you have used a large quantity of non-distilled water (more than 0.5 ltr.) in an emergency, drive directly to a qualified workshop and have the coolant changed.

Brake fluid

Fig. 163 Front compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 258, General information*.

Checking the brake fluid level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 261, Fig. 161*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle: ▸

89A012720AM

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Seek professional assistance.

Having the brake fluid changed

The brake fluid must be changed at regular intervals by a qualified workshop. The workshop can inform you about the service intervals for the brake fluid change.

WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired – risk of accident! Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).
- If used brake fluid or brake fluid not approved for your vehicle is used, the effectiveness of the brakes will be seriously impaired and the brake system could even fail completely. The vehicle manufacturer will accept no liability for faults or damage which occur as a result. In addition, no warranty claims will be accepted.

CAUTION

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Electrical system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the warning/indicator lamp / or lights up, there is a power supply or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

/ Electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

Stop the vehicle safely and do not drive on. You should also switch off the ignition ⇨ . Seek professional assistance.

Electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop

When you switch off the ignition it will not be possible to restart the vehicle. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

Switch off any electrical equipment which is not required (some equipment may be switched off automatically). The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

- If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged by the high-voltage battery while driving.
- If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Electrical system: currently restricted. You can continue driving with care

The power supply of the 12-volt electrical system is restricted. This may happen if the 12-volt battery is discharged or not performing at its full capacity. The 12-volt battery can be recharged while driving. Please drive carefully until the warning disappears. Switch off any unnecessary ▶

energy consumers until then. If the indicator lamp does not disappear after a while, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Battery

General information on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠.

Several batteries using different technologies are fitted in your vehicle:

– 12-volt vehicle battery (e.g. for basic supply) ⇨ *page 266, Safety information*
– High-voltage battery (e.g. for electric drive, air conditioner) ⇨ *page 107, Introduction*

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The 12-volt battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you activate the drive system.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total 12-volt battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇨ *page 267*. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12-volt vehicle battery. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

Replacing the battery

Applies to: 12-volt vehicle battery

Any work on the battery **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been developed for use in its installation location and is equipped with safety features. If a 12-volt vehicle battery has to be replaced, please enquire about the electromagnetic compatibility, capacity and the required maintenance, performance and safety features of the new 12 volt vehicle battery before purchasing it from your qualified workshop. The gas vent on the 12-volt vehicle battery must always be located on the side of the negative terminal. The gas vent on the side of the positive terminal must always be sealed.

When replacing the 12-volt lead battery, use only maintenance-free 12-volt lead batteries to standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must be from October 2014 or later.

WARNING

– Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly. If the correct equipment is not used, safety-related functions may fail – risk of accident!
– Using a 12 volt vehicle battery that does not have the same specifications or dimensions as the factory-fitted 12 volt vehicle battery ▶

can cause short-circuits or fires. Serious or fatal injuries may occur as a result.
– Only maintenance-free and leak-proof 12 volt vehicle batteries that have the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12 volt vehicle battery may be used.
– Charging cables or jump leads must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the front compartment ⇨ *page 267*.

CAUTION

– If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the 12-volt vehicle battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇨ *page 267, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*.
– Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly.
– If a battery is used that does not meet the quality specifications set by Audi, or that has a battery capacity that is too low, the vehicle's certification for use on public roads is void and thus also the vehicle's registration ⇨ ⚠.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 306, Information on waste disposal*.

Safety information

Explanation of warning symbols:

⚠	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
📖	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.
	12-volt vehicle battery. High-voltage component. Improper handling can cause short circuits ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on batteries on page 265*.
	With the exception of jump-starting and charging the 12-volt vehicle battery, all work on the 12-volt vehicle battery must be performed by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on batteries on page 265* ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on batteries on page 266*.
	High voltage! The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted.
	Electrolyte is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses. **First aid**: If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay. Neutralise any electrolyte spilt on skin or clothing immediately with soapy water and rinse with plenty of fresh water. If electrolyte is drunk by accident, seek the assistance of a doctor immediately.
	Always wear safety glasses.
	If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery! Avoid sparks and short-circuits when handling cables and electrical equipment.
	The high-voltage battery is flammable. The high-voltage battery must never be exposed to fire, sparks or naked flames. The high-voltage battery must always be handled with care, in order to prevent damage and fluid leaks.

	Always keep children away from batteries and electrolyte.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!
	Applies to high-voltage battery: Improper handling of the high-voltage battery can lead to serious or fatal injury. Never dismantle the high-voltage battery and never remove its cover.
	Applies to high-voltage battery: Improper handling of the high-voltage battery can lead to serious or fatal injury. Maintenance work on the high-voltage battery must only be carried out by suitably qualified and trained personnel. Never make modifications to the high-voltage battery. The high-voltage battery must never come into contact with water or other fluids when it is open. Fluids can cause short-circuits, electric shocks and burns. The high-voltage battery must only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends that the work be carried out by a registered Audi workshop, which has trained workshop personnel and all the required tools and parts.

WARNING

Any work on the batteries **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

– Any gases escaping from batteries may be toxic or flammable.
– The substances contained in batteries can be corrosive. If the contents of the battery come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.

Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

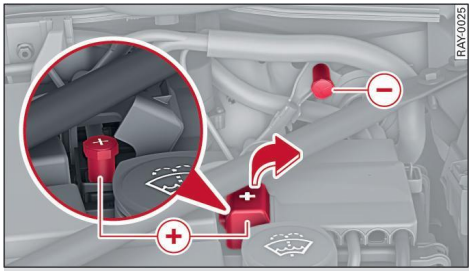


Fig. 164 Front compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 258, General information*, ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on batteries on page 265* and ⇨ ⚠.

Important: Only use chargers with a **maximum charge voltage of 14.8 V** (the battery cables do not have to be disconnected).

The terminals for the charging cables are located in the front compartment. The earth point ⊖ is always on the vehicle's body.

- ▸ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 259*.
- ▸ Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 164*.
- ▸ Connect the charger cables correctly to the positive terminal ⊕ and the earth point ⊖.
- ▸ Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.
- ▸ Keep the bonnet fully open while charging ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▸ Now disconnect the charger cables.
- ▸ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 259*.

WARNING

– Never use unsuitable charging equipment or charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
– Charging cables or jump leads must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery ▶

on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the front compartment ⇨ *page 267*.
– A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area.
– When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the electrolyte to escape – risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process – risk of explosion!
– Leave the bonnet open while the 12-volt vehicle battery is charging. Closing the bonnet could cause an electrical short circuit – risk of fire!

Note

– Use only the terminals in the front compartment to charge the battery.
– Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

Windscreen washer system

Fig. 165 Front compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 258, General information*.

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen/rear window and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 261*. For the container capacity, please refer to ⇨ *page 303*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please add washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system*.

CAUTION

– The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
– Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
– Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

– **Inspection reminder**: After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off.
– **Inspection due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection service, **Inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off. ▶

Checking the service intervals

You can check the distance and time remaining until the next service inspection.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Service intervals**.

WARNING

If you neglect to have the vehicle serviced promptly at the specified intervals, or if the scope of the servicing work is insufficient, this can lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

CAUTION

– Regular servicing of the vehicle not only sustains its service life and preserves its value, but also helps to maintain operational and road safety. Service work should therefore always be carried out according to the Audi guidelines.
– Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.
– Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle resulting from insufficient servicing or a lack of availability of parts.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

General information

In this Owner's Manual, the term "wheel" refers to the combination of rim and tyre. If only one of the above components is meant, the term tyre or rim is used.

- ▸ Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▸ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▸ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- ▸ Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- ▸ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▸ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

WARNING

– Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out – risk of accident!

– Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

CAUTION

– Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. Audi recommends that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

– Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar. This does not apply to rims which are supplied from the factory as complete winter wheels.

Tyre designations

The following example explains certain specifications on the tyre's sidewall:

205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm
60 Height/width ratio in %
R Code for tyre type: radial
16 Rim diameter in inches
92 Load index
H Speed rating

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date may possibly only be indicated on the inner side of the wheel:

DOT ... 2224 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2024.

AO or RO

Tyres with the marking "AO" or "RO" which are specially matched to your Audi are supplied with your vehicle. Provided that they are used properly, these tyres fulfil very high standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

New wheels or tyres

Audi recommends having all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel. ▶

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- The standard wheels on the front axle have different dimensions to the wheels on the rear axle. Both wheels on each axle must be of the same dimensions, type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇨ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇨ ⚠.

The specifications for the rim/tyre combinations approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document [1]). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.

⚠ WARNING

– Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
– For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
– It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
– Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
– The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
– If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!
– If any of the tyres are incorrectly mounted on the rims, the tyres may be damaged or a blow-out may occur. The tyres must be mounted on the rims by trained personnel – risk of accident!

Tyre wear / damage

Fig. 166 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

[1] COC = Certificate of conformity

89A012720AM

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

– The wear on under-inflated or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
– Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. If the vehicle is driven in this way, check the tread depth every 5,000 km – 10,000 km.
– If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
– Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇨ *Fig. 166* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

When checking the tread depth, you must check the tread wear indicators across the entire width of all four tyres.

The minimum tread depth[1)] is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Changing wheels round

The standard wheels on the front axle have different dimensions to the wheels on the rear axle. The wider wheels are fitted on the rear axle. The wheels must NOT be changed round.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇨ *page 288*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.

Mobility tyres

Applies to: vehicles with mobility tyres

Mobility tyres can be recognised from the “SEAL” marking on the sidewall.

A sealing compound on the inner side of the tread surface of a mobility tyre surrounds the foreign body and seals the tyre temporarily. Leave the foreign body in the tyre and drive to a qualified workshop soon.

The tyre repair kit* ⇨ *page 284* must NOT be used.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Tyre pressure

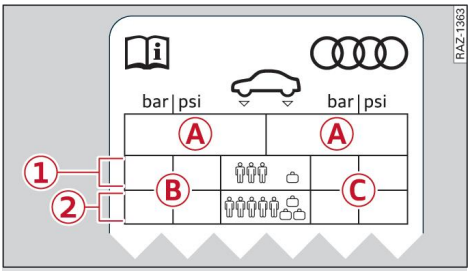


Fig. 167 B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇨ *Fig. 167* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

Ⓐ Tyre size ▶

[1)] Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

Ⓑ Tyre pressure for the front wheels

Ⓒ Tyre pressure for the rear wheels

① Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded

② Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressures to the specified maximum ② ⇨ ⚠.

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- Refer to the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 167* for the correct tyre pressures.
- If necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
- Then store the new tyre pressures on the MMI ⇨ *page 276*.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

– Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

– Under-inflation, high speeds and heavy loads require the tyres to flex more, which causes them to overheat. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

– Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase the energy consumption.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange* or bolted trim parts* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇨ *page 288, After changing a wheel*.

– Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.

– Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.

– Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself – risk of accident!

Winter tyres

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

- Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 270*. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇨ *page 272*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired ▶

by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce energy consumption.

Note

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ⛷ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

Snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions.

- Snow chains can be used on the rear wheels only.
- Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
8Jx19	45 mm	255/50

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 12 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.

Note

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC ⇨ *page 105*.

Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel/tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 272*.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 276*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 272, Fig. 167*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

– The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
– The tyres have suffered structural damage.
– The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇨ *page 276*.
– Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.

Indicator lamps

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇨ ⚠. Check the tyre(s) and change them if necessary. Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 276*.

If the indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal is issued although you have not yet stored the new tyre pressures, drive to an authorised workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If TPMS appears and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇨ *page 276*. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
– It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.

Note

– If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
– When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction may occur.
– The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to “Audi Genuine Tyres” ⇨ *page 270*. Audi recommends that you use these tyres.

Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the system.

- Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 272*.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Tyre pressure** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**.

Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

Care of vehicle and cleaning

General information

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

– Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
– Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid, bonnet or sunroof*, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not point the spray jet at the clip wall mount*.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and sunroof* are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Ensure that the car is free to roll while it is being washed in a tunnel car wash. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with plenty of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.

WARNING

– Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!
– To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when ▶

cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
– After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

CAUTION

– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.
– Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.
– Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width when entering and driving through the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
– Please ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance in tunnel car washes ⇨ *page 102*. The vehicle could otherwise become lodged on the guide rails – risk of damage!
– Improper use of high-pressure cleaners can cause damage to the vehicle. Never point a water jet at electric/electronic components when cleaning the front compartment. These could be seriously damaged by the pressure or by exposure to water and could fail as a result.
– Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
– The decals* must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
– Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
– Matt-painted vehicle parts:
  – Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
  – Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
  – Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Information on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇨ ⚠.

Cleaning the exterior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇨ *page 58*
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a]; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Rubber seals	Dirt/deposits	Micro-fibre cloth with mild detergent[a]
	Frost	Protect the seals on the doors/bonnet/boot lid/flaps, etc. against freezing with suitable care products
Paintwork	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts ⇨ *page 277*
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a]
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
	Fuel overflow	Remove immediately using a soft cloth and then with mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
Audi e-tron charging system	Dirt/deposits	Soft, dry cloth
Clip wall mount	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent

[a] Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Cleaning the interior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a]

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a]; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent[a]
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a] (allow to dry before retracting)
Fabrics, leatherette, microfibre	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent[a]
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent[a], dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent[a]
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent[a]
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

[a] Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

WARNING

– Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system or the connectors in water.

– Only clean the Audi e-tron charging system when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the electricity grid and from the vehicle.

CAUTION

– **Headlights/rear lights**
  – Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge – risk of damage!
  – Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!
– **Wheels**
  – Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
  – If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.
– **Camera lenses**
  – Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water – danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
  – Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks.
– **Windows and windscreen**
  – Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
  – To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.
– **Ornamental trim/mouldings**
  – Do not use chrome cleaning agents.
– **Rubber seals**
  – Do not use solvent-based cleaning products – risk of damage!
– **Paintwork**
  – The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
  – Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
  – Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
  – Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
– **Decals**
  – Do not clean the decals with a high-pressure cleaner as this could cause them to come loose.
  – Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
  – Do not polish decals – risk of damage!
  – Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.
– **Displays/instrument cluster**
  – Before cleaning, ensure that the displays and the instrument cluster are switched off and cool. To switch off the centre display, select the following on the home screen of the MMI: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI** > **Screen cleaning**.
  – The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
  – Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!
– **Control consoles**
  – Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!
– **Seat belts**
  – Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
  – Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
  – If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.

▶

89A012720AM

– **Fabrics/leatherette/microfibre**
  – Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/microfibre fabrics.
  – To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  – Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
  – Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  – Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.
– **Natural leather**
  – Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
  – Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  – Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
  – Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.
– **Clip wall mount**
  – Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or fluids containing alcohol – risk of discolouration!

Note

– It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
– Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.
– The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. They can give you advice on the measures necessary, depending on where and for how long the vehicle is to be kept out of service.

Mobility

General information

- ▸ If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- ▸ Put on your high-visibility vest.
- ▸ Place the warning triangle in a visible location.
- ▸ Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

WARNING

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

High-visibility vest

Applies to: vehicles with high-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the front left door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle

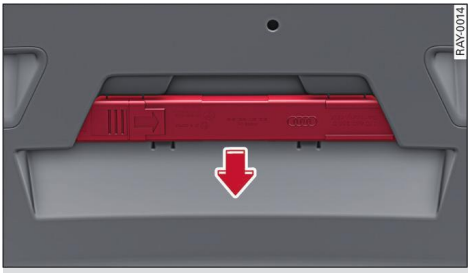


Fig. 168 Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

- ▸ Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

WARNING

Always stow the warning triangle safely in the plastic case after use and secure it in the holder. Otherwise it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit

The first-aid kit is stowed in the compartment underneath the floor mat ⇨ *page 284, Fig. 169*.

Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

- ▸ Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- ▸ To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Note

– The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.
– The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

Tool kit/tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with toolkit and tyre repair kit

Fig. 169 Luggage compartment: Floor panel*

The tools, tyre repair kit and compressor are stored under the floor panel* in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Take hold of the handle and fold back the floor panel* ⇨ *Fig. 169*.
- ▸ Take hold of the tab and fold over the floor mat to open the compartment underneath.

The tyre repair kit and compressor are stowed in a storage bag.

Tyre repair kit

Preparations

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▸ Please refer to the important safety information ⇨ *page 283*.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇨ *page 284*.

Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

Fig. 170 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

- – On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ① ⇨ *Fig. 170*.
- – If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
- – If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.
- – On mobility tyres* ⇨ *page 272* (these can be recognised from the “SEAL” marking on the sidewall).

In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

WARNING

- – Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
- – Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- – If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- – Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
- – If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical assistance immediately.
- – Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- – If any allergic reactions should occur, seek medical assistance immediately.
- – Keep the sealant away from children.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 306, Information on waste disposal*. ▶

Note

– If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
– Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. Have the sealing compound exchanged by a qualified workshop.
– Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.
– Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

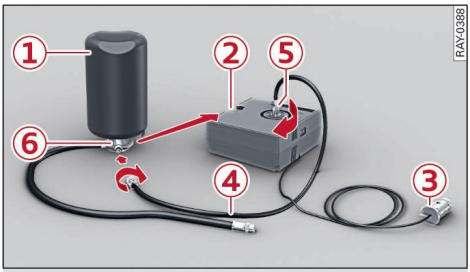


Fig. 171 Components of the tyre repair kit

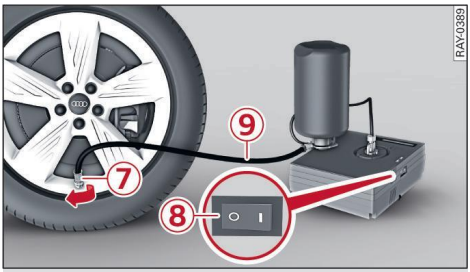


Fig. 172 Connecting the tyre repair kit

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇨ *page 284*.

Setting up the tyre repair kit

▸ Take the connector ③ and the compressor hose ④ out from the bottom of the housing.
▸ Screw one end of the compressor hose ④ clockwise into the socket ⑤ on the compressor[1)].
Screw the other end onto the flange ⑥ of the tyre sealant can ①.
▸ Place the tyre sealant can (flange facing down) into the opening ② on the compressor.
▸ Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the damaged tyre.
▸ Screw the filler hose ⑨ onto the valve ⑦ ⇨ *Fig. 172*.
▸ Insert the connector ③ ⇨ *Fig. 171* into a socket in the vehicle.
▸ Switch on the ignition.

Inflating the tyre

▸ Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *Fig. 172* on the compressor to position **I**.
▸ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
▸ If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the filler hose and drive 10 metres forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Please observe the manufacturer's safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.
– If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 10 minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
– Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.

Note

Do not use the compressor for longer than 10 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

[1)] Even if the compressor in your vehicle looks slightly different, it will be operated in much the same way.

After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:

– Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
– Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
– Vehicle handling could be impaired.
– If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Preparations

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required. Audi recommends having the wheel changed by a qualified workshop.

Commercially available tools, such as a jack and box spanner, are required for the wheel change. These should be placed within reach before starting the work.

- Please refer to the important safety information ⇨ *page 283*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- Switch off the ignition.

WARNING

When using a jack*, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing covers

Fig. 173 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

Applies to vehicles with wheel bolt caps:

- Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle toolkit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇨ *Fig. 173*.
- Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Applies to vehicles with wheel covers:

- Pull off the wheel cover by hand.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

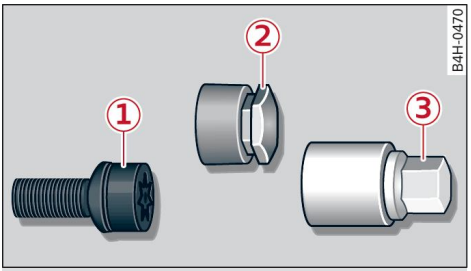


Fig. 174 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To remove the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle toolkit).

- Remove the cap (2).
- Slide the adapter (3) all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt (1).
- Fit the box spanner* as far as it will go over the adapter (3).
- Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 287*.

Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner* as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1)].
- Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise to loosen the wheel bolt.

WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

Raising the vehicle

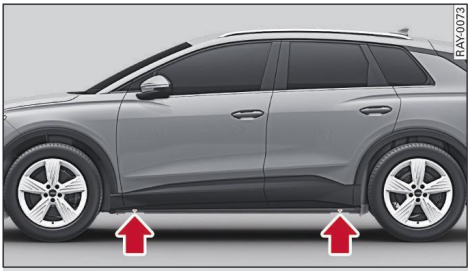


Fig. 175 Sills: markings

- Always provide a firm base for the jack* on the ground. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.
- Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇨ *Fig. 175*. The jacking point is located behind the marking under the door sill.
- Raise the vehicle using the jack* until the wheel is slightly clear of the ground.

WARNING

– Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it – risk of injury!
– Make sure the jack* is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in – risk of injury!
– Apply the jack* only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack* can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
– Never switch on the power unit when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
– Do not work under the vehicle when it is on the jack – risk of injury!

CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Taking off / putting on the wheel

Taking off the wheel

- Unscrew the slackened wheel bolts using the box spanner* and place them on a clean surface.
- Take off the wheel ⇨ (!).

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇨ *page 288*. ▶

[1)] An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 286*.

- ▸ Ensure that the wheel bolts and threads on the wheel hubs are clean, turn easily and are free of oil and grease.
- ▸ Position the wheel on the hub.
- ▸ Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly.
- ▸ Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- ▸ Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner*.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes on ⇨ *page 270*.

CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

After changing a wheel

- ▸ Fit the wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- ▸ Stow the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 79*.
- ▸ Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ▸ Adjust the tyre pressure and store it on the MMI ⇨ *page 276*.
- ▸ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 120 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ▸ Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Jump-starting

Preparations

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

If the drive system cannot be activated because the 12 volt vehicle battery is discharged, you can use another vehicle to jump-start the 12 volt vehicle battery. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.

WARNING

- – When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads – risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
- – Note the safety warnings referring to working in the front compartment ⇨ *page 258*.
- – Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury).

CAUTION

- – If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

▶

– Do **not** use your vehicle to jump-start another vehicle. This would cause serious damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

Note

– There must be no contact between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting battery.
– The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
– Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need.

Jump-starting the vehicle

The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.

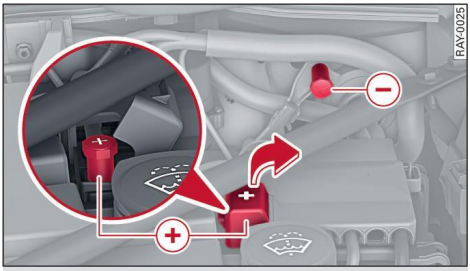


Fig. 176 Front compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

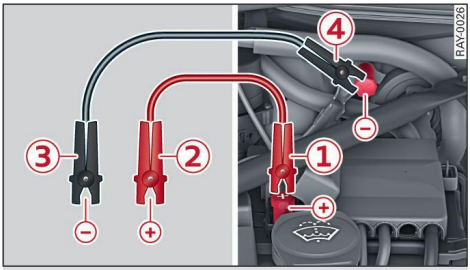


Fig. 177 Connecting jump leads

The terminals for the jump leads are located in the front compartment.

Please observe the general information on the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 265*.

Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead (red)

▸ Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 176*.

1. Connect one end of the positive lead (red) to the jump-start connection ① ⇨ *Fig. 177* on your vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative terminals with the negative lead (black)

3. Connect one end of the negative lead (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Connect the other end of the negative lead (black) to the jump-start connection ④ on your vehicle.

Activating the drive system

▸ Start the engine of the vehicle providing the electricity and let it run at idling speed.
▸ Activate the drive system on your vehicle with the discharged battery.
▸ If you cannot activate the drive system, stop work and try again after a minute or so.
▸ Disconnect the leads in reverse sequence.
▸ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
▸ Contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.

WARNING

– Jump leads must never be connected directly to the battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the front compartment.
– The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
– The sealing caps on the battery cells must not be opened.
– Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
– Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any ▸

moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

CAUTION

Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle.

Note

Connect the jump leads so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

Towing away

General information

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

Towing requires some experience. Audi recommends contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle.

Information on towing vehicles

– The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
– The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

The vehicle must be transported with all wheels off the ground by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter. Contact a towing service.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

WARNING

– There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.
– There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter – risk of accident!
– Never secure the tow-bar or tow-rope to any part of the vehicle's axles or suspension as these could be damaged and lead to accidents and severe injuries.

CAUTION

– If the warning lamp lights up and the message **Vehicle must not be towed. See owner's manual** appears, the vehicle must not be towed. The power unit may be seriously damaged.
– If the warning lamp lights up, there is a fault in the cooling system. The vehicle must not be towed away. The power unit may be seriously damaged.
– If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
– The vehicle must not be towed in order to charge the high-voltage battery (through recuperation), as this can cause serious damage both to the vehicle towing and to the vehicle being towed.
– For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be tow-started.

Note

– The vehicle is not suitable for towing other vehicles. ▶

– Switch Audi pre sense* off ⇨ *page 177* if the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. or being towed away. This prevents the pre sense* system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.
– Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.
– Please observe the relevant local regulations when towing away.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 290*.

Preparations

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 291*, ⇨ *page 292*.
- Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇨ *page 53*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

- Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- Accelerate with particular care.
- Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇨ ⚠.
- Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would.
- Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 99*.
- Select transmission position N.
- Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

⚠ WARNING

– If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.
– If the power supply should fail while the vehicle is being towed, stop towing immediately and seek professional assistance.
– In emergency situations, the vehicle may be towed or pushed at walking speed up to 100 m on its own wheels, even if the warning lamp is lit, before it can be transported away by a rescue vehicle. In this case, vibrations may occur in the drive system and the rear wheels may lock up, especially if the road is icy or wet. If the wheels lock, this can affect the steering response, leading to accidents and serious injuries.

Front towline anchorage

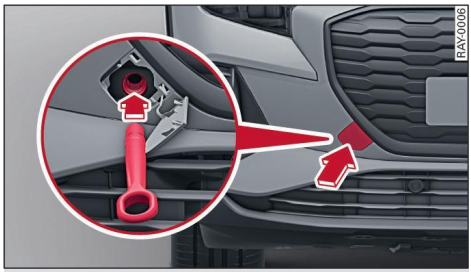


Fig. 178 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 284*.
- Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇨ *Fig. 178*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

⚠ WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw ▶

connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Rear towline anchorage

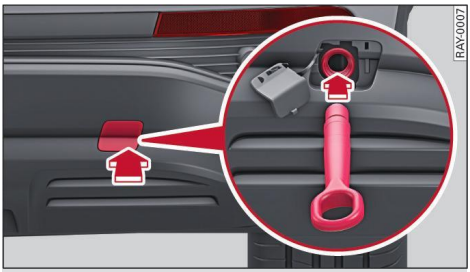


Fig. 179 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

Vehicles with towline anchorage

Vehicles which do not have a factory-fitted towing bracket* have a connection for a towline anchorage on the right side of the rear bumper.

- ▸ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 284*.
- ▸ Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇨ *Fig. 179*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▸ Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ▸ Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

Vehicles with towing bracket*

- ▸ Swivel out the towing bracket ⇨ *page 136*.
- ▸ Attach the tow-bar or the tow-rope to the towing bracket.

Vehicles which have a factory-fitted towing bracket* do **not** have a screw connection at the rear for the towline anchorage.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the towing bracket*, only use tow-bars with suitable attachments. If a tow-bar is not available, a tow-rope may be used.

Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Changing fuses

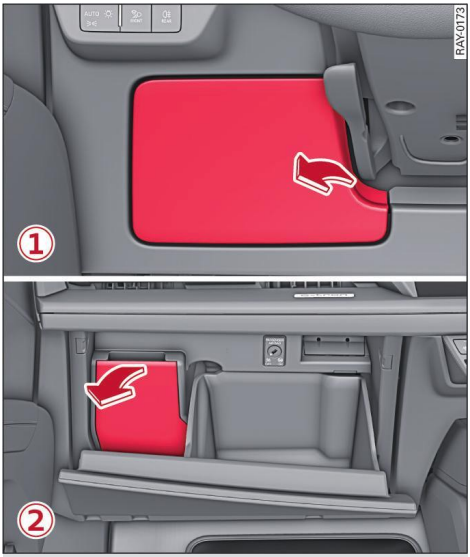


Fig. 180 Dash panel (left side): Cover (left-hand drive vehicles) ① / cover in glove box (right-hand drive vehicles) ②

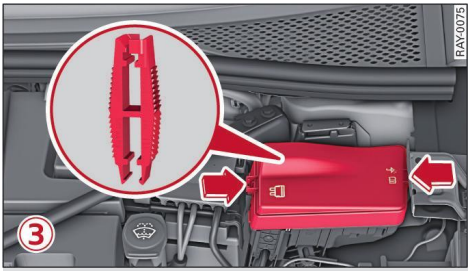


Fig. 181 Front compartment (left side): Fuse cover ③

There are fuses fitted in various locations in your vehicle. The information below includes only those fuses that you can replace yourself. Should any other fuses need to be replaced, please contact a qualified workshop. Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the fuses are behind a cover on the left of the dash panel (left-hand drive vehicles) ① or behind a cover in the glove box (right-hand drive vehicles) ②. Further fuses are located beneath a cover in the front compartment (left side) ③.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the affected component.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ Take the clip out of the fuse carrier in the front compartment ③.
- ▸ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▸ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same ampere rating.
- ▸ Put the cover back on.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
grey	2
purple	3
pink	4
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red (narrow)	10
light blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
light green	30
blue-green	35
orange	40
red (wide)	50

WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a different ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!

CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Note

Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Fuses – dash panel

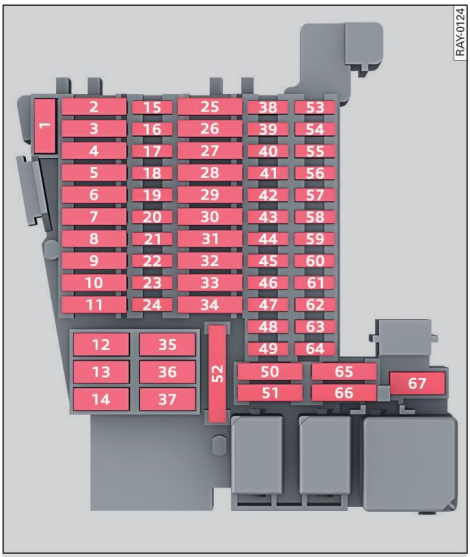


Fig. 182 Dash panel (left side): Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
2	Airbag control unit
3	Towing bracket
4	Front camera for driver assist systems, interior mirror
5	Control unit for vehicle electrical system, rear light (left-side)
6	Control unit for vehicle electrical system, interior lighting, background lighting
7	Air conditioner, seat heating
8	Panoramic sunroof
9	Door control unit (left)
10	Lumbar support (front left)
11	Towing bracket
13	Control unit for vehicle electrical system, central locking system, windscreen washer system
14	Sound system
16	Power supply for measurement wiring harness
17	Parking aid, side assist
18	Steering column lock, control unit for convenience access and start authorisation, anti-theft alarm system, external sound generator
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call and communication control unit
20	Audi phone box, USB connection, control unit for Audi connect apps
21	Camera systems
22	Drive system control unit
23	Control unit for internet access
25	Belt tensioners (driver's side)
26	Door control unit (right)
27	Belt tensioners (front passenger's side)
28	Emergency cut-out connection for high-voltage battery, high-voltage charging system
29	Towing bracket
30	Infotainment system
31	Towing bracket
32	Control unit for vehicle electrical system, rear light (right-side)
33	Lumbar support
34	A/C control console
36	Air conditioner blowers
37	Boot lid control unit
39	Steering column electronics
40	Anti-theft alarm system
41	Diagnostic interface
42	Selector lever, garage door opener

No.	Electrical equipment
43	Interior temperature sensor, air quality sensor, A/C control console, rear window heating
44	Light/rain/humidity sensor, interior lighting, roof module, anti-theft alarm system, diagnostic connection, light switch, driver and convenience functions
45	Steering column electronics
46	MMI control dial, centre display, head-up display
47	Suspension control
48	USB connection
52	12-volt socket
59	Interior mirror, 12 V socket, seat occupied recognition sensor (front passenger seat)
60	Power supply for measurement wiring harness, diagnostic connection
61	Electric drive system
66	Rear window wiper
67	Rear window heating

Fuses – front compartment

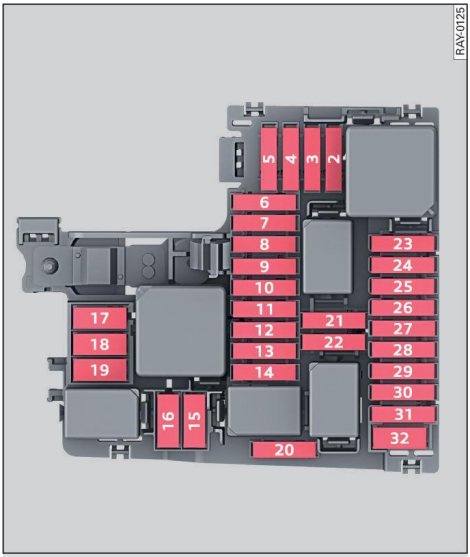


Fig. 183 Front compartment (left-side): Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
2	Anti-lock brake system (ABS), electronic stabilisation control (ESC)
3	Electric drive system, high-voltage charger
4	Left headlight
5	Right headlight
6	Adaptive cruise assist
9	Horn
10	Wipers
11	A/C relay, compressor and further A/C components, A/C control console (rear), air quality sensor, ioniser
12	External sound generator
13	Anti-lock brake system (ABS), electronic stabilisation control (ESC)
15	Anti-lock brake system (ABS), electronic stabilisation control (ESC)
16	Power unit cooling
17	Windscreen heating
18	Windscreen heating
23	Drive system control unit
24	Power unit cooling
25	Thermal management, high-voltage heater
26	Coolant pump for high-voltage heater, cooling air inlet (adjustable)
32	Brake system pressure accumulator

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is fitted with maintenance-free headlights and rear lights. If a bulb does need to be changed, however, please contact an Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Data protection

Information on data protection

Further information can be found online on your regional Audi site or the MMI in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

Image recording

Monitoring of surroundings

Applies to: vehicles with monitoring of surroundings

The functions of the park assist require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to do this.

The images from the camera are not recorded or stored. They are immediately transmitted to the relevant control unit in the vehicle for processing. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the supporting systems to control the vehicle.

Note

The live images from the cameras and the anonymous technical dimensions are stored for a few seconds in the short-term memory. They do not allow any conclusions to be drawn on the identity of persons or vehicles.

Data recorders

Vehicle control units

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for diagnosis and repairs. This involves only certain data which are collected or stored for a very limited time when a control unit registers a system event. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

Onboard diagnostic system (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

- Improper use of the connection socket for the onboard diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only have the data read out by a qualified workshop.

Event data recorder

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to make it possible to reconstruct how the systems in the vehicle behave in accident situations. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur. Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data will be stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal ▶

data on the occupants or the accident location will be stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM) which collects data not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/off, system events etc.), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense etc.) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular:

– If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or
– If the police have made an official request; or
– If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

Information transmitted

Data collection

Applies to: vehicles with data collection

Depending on the country, Audi can access the vehicle and collect data for the following purposes, for example:
– Data collection for research and development
– Data collection for statistics, analyses and reporting purposes
– Data collection for personalised assessments

The data collected and sent to Audi for these purposes may include, for example, various data regarding technical functions, environmental data, driving data and usage data. The data are sent from the vehicle at the time they are collected.

Further information can be found on the MMI. On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

If you wish to change the data collection settings, please contact an Audi dealer for further information. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to change the data collection settings in the privacy settings.

Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Privacy**.
▸ Further information on the privacy settings and the corresponding symbols can be displayed in the status bar by pressing ⓘ on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on. ▶

Maximum privacy setting

When the **Activate privacy** function is switched on, the data connection will be deactivated or the transmission of data restricted, because all safety-related Audi connect services and all Audi connect services required by law or contract will remain activated. The majority of Audi connect services will be deactivated.

When this function is switched off, the data connection will be available for the use of Audi connect services. After deactivating the **Activate privacy** function, you should check the individual data categories as described under *Individual privacy settings*.

Individual privacy settings

You can use individual MMI settings to determine which data are transmitted from the vehicle. Data will be transmitted if you switch on a data category.

You can also deactivate individual services for your vehicle at my.audi.com when you are logged in to the vehicle as the key user ⇨ *page 31*. These deactivated services will not be available in the vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

- The following interfaces are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, smartphone interface, Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC) and onboard diagnostic system (OBD).
- When maximum privacy is switched on, your vehicle will not receive safety updates or certificates for establishing an encrypted connection, depending on the vehicle equipment. To receive safety updates and certificates, switch maximum privacy off for at least ten minutes every three months. Ensure that your vehicle is connected to the internet. A symbol in the status bar of the MMI indicates whether the necessary data connection exists ⇨ *page 24*.
- If data transmission is restricted, this has the following effects on the data transmitted by the Audi connect services and the emergency call function, if fitted.
  - The emergency call function remains available in its entirety and data will still be transmitted.
  - No data will be transmitted if an online roadside assistance call is activated; however a telephone call will be placed.
  - Stored destinations (favourites, last destinations, etc.) will only be stored in the vehicle. If you allow data transmission again, these destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account. If you do not want these destinations to be synchronised, delete them before you allow data transmission again.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect infotainment services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect infotainment services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that Audi can provide the services and that you can use them. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect infotainment services and allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.

If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect infotainment portfolio, ▶

you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case Audi passes on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. Audi will not store your personal content. The necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.

Further information can be found online at your regional Audi site or on the MMI by selecting the following from the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

89A012720AM

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 258, General information* and ⇨ *page 287, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the guarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular servicing work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, cost-efficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

Certain servicing work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for servicing work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the guarantee/warranty.

Technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Depending on the country, this may also invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. Audi recommends having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

- There is a risk of accident if servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle are not performed properly The functioning of the airbags, the driver assist systems and the vehicle may be impaired. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- The is a risk of accident if work on the vehicle is not performed properly. Serious injuries may occur as a result. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- Please read the safety information on the front compartment ⇨ *page 258*.

CAUTION

- If servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).

– If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
– Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.

For the sake of the environment

– You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
– Technical modifications to the vehicle can have an adverse effect on energy consumption.

Note

Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.

Accessories and replacement parts

Introduction

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Parts and Audi accessories. Audi cannot judge the reliability and suitability of products that are not Audi Genuine Parts or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Have all work performed by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends having all work performed by a qualified Audi workshop.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must bear the approval symbols for the respective countries (e.g. **e** mark in the European Union) and must be approved for use in your vehicle. A cruise control system is an example of this type of equipment.

Any **additional electrical equipment** which is connected, but which does not serve to control the vehicle itself, must bear the declarations of conformity for the respective countries (e.g. the CE symbol in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.

Transmitters

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe the relevant local regulations and follow the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters.

WARNING

– The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Never secure accessories (such as telephone brackets or cup holders) on airbag cover panels or in the areas around the airbags; this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.
– When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

CAUTION

Have the number plate or number plate holder fitted by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. The ▶

vehicle may be damaged if work is carried out improperly.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be found at the following locations, depending on your country:

– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Car information**.
– At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen
– Stamped under the carpet below the front right seat

Type plate

Vehicles have a type plate in certain countries. The type plate is bonded onto the right door frame.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different country versions and test methods.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct.

Note

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mirrors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
Q4 e-tron	4588 – 4591	1865	2108	1599 – 1639
Q4 Sportback e-tron	4588 – 4591	1865	2108	1581 – 1622

Capacities

	Approximate capacities (litres)
Windscreen washer system	3
Windscreen/headlight washer system	6

Weights

Roof load

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

The maximum permissible roof load is 75 kg.

Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU regulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg. ▶

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
Q4 45 e-tron	2145	2660	1200	1530
Q4 45 e-tron quattro	2235	2750	1285	1535
Q4 55 e-tron quattro	2235	2750	1285	1535
Q4 Sportback 45 e-tron	2145	2660	1200	1530
Q4 Sportback 45 e-tron quattro	2235	2750	1285	1535
Q4 Sportback 55 e-tron quattro	2235	2750	1285	1535

Trailer weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed 75 kg.

The values listed do not apply to towing brackets with square tubes ⇨ *page 140*. The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradient up to 8%	With brakes on gradient up to 12%
Q4 45 e-tron	1625	750	1200	1000
Q4 45 e-tron quattro	1630	750	1400	1200
Q4 55 e-tron quattro	1630	750	1400	1200
Q4 Sportback 45 e-tron	1625	750	1200	1000
Q4 Sportback 45 e-tron quattro	1630	750	1400	1200
Q4 Sportback 55 e-tron quattro	1630	750	1400	1200

Motor data

	Battery energy content, gross/net [a] (kWh)	Max. power output [b] (kW)	Max. torque (Nm)	Maximum speed (km/h)
Q4 45 e-tron	82 / 77	210	560	180
Q4 45 e-tron quattro	82 / 77	210[c]	134 / 560[d]	180
Q4 55 e-tron quattro	82 / 77	250[c]	134 / 560[d]	180
Q4 Sportback 45 e-tron	82 / 77	210	560	180

	Battery energy content, gross/net [a] (kWh)	Max. power output [b] (kW)	Max. torque (Nm)	Maximum speed (km/h)
Q4 Sportback 45 e-tron quattro	82 / 77	210[c]	134 / 560[d]	180
Q4 Sportback 55 e-tron quattro	82 / 77	250[c]	134 / 560[d]	180

a) The specified net battery energy content is a rounded value which is typical for the battery and independent of the vehicle. It is determined with a constant load profile under defined conditions and takes into account the full battery energy content range which can be used in the vehicle until the vehicle comes to a standstill. The actual discharge energy may differ from this, as it depends on the specific driving profile and the battery temperature.

b) The power available in individual driving situations depends on variable factors, such as the outside temperature, and the temperature, charge level and conditioning status or physical ageing of the high-voltage battery. Deviations, especially from the above parameters, can lead to reduced power. The power currently available is shown in the vehicle's power meter.

c) Maximum power determined according to UN-GTR.21.

d) The value before the stroke applies to the electric motor on the front axle; the value after the stroke to the electric motor on the rear axle.

Other information

Trademarks and licences

This Owner's Manual does not use any symbols to indicate trademarks or registered trademarks, such as ® or ™. However, the absence of such symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any proprietary names.

Apple, iPhone, iPod touch, Apple CarPlay, Lightning and iTunes Radio are trademarks of Apple Inc.

All other product and manufacturer names used may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Driving school mode

Applies to: vehicles with driving school mode

You can have the vehicle speed and the direction indicated by the turn signals shown on the infotainment display.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Driving school mode**.

When the menu is switched (e.g. to radio), the vehicle speed and indicated direction will appear again on the display after five seconds.

Note

The value indicated in the speedometer is the relevant speed.

Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH

On the basis of the European chemicals regulation REACH, Audi provides information on materials which may be present in your vehicle.

You can call up this information online using your vehicle identification number ⇨ *page 303*:

www.audi.de/reach

Information on waste disposal

General information

Please observe the relevant country-specific regulations on waste disposal and the information below. Further information on disposal, return and recycling can be obtained from Audi dealers, qualified workshops or your regional Audi sales centre's website via www.audi.com.

Batteries

As the end user, it is your responsibility to dispose of batteries correctly. The crossed-out bin indicates your legal obligation to dispose of waste correctly. This means that you are obliged to collect and dispose of batteries separately from normal domestic waste. Special care is required when handling batteries containing lithium (Li). For example these batteries must not be exposed to excessive heat and must not be damaged. Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols for Cd (cadmium), Hg (mercury) and Pb (lead) in cases where these heavy metals are present in concentrations above the respective limits. The battery contains materials which can damage the health of humans and animals and can accumulate in the environment. To prevent this, it is essential to ensure separate collection and proper return.

Depending on the country, batteries may be returned free-of-charge to your Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Commercially available batteries can also be returned to the retailer.

Electric/electronic equipment

Electric/electronic equipment is identified by the symbol with the crossed-out bin . Electric/electronic equipment with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from normal domestic waste, according to the applicable legal regulations. Batteries contained in the equipment and separate rechargeable batteries must be removed first and disposed of separately in the appropriate manner. ▶

Depending on your country, electric/electronic equipment can be returned to local waste disposal agencies or public collection points. In addition, electric/electronic equipment can also be returned to the distributor/retailer via shipping services. The corresponding dealers/retailers can provide you with the exact conditions of return.

Note

It is your own responsibility to delete any personal data stored on the devices.

Vehicle

For information on the proper disposal of your vehicle, please visit your national/regional Audi sales organisation via www.audi.com.

All legal requirements must be complied with when scrapping the entire vehicle or specific individual components such as airbag units, batteries for remote controls, and belt tensioners. These components may contain perchlorates. Audi recommends contacting a qualified workshop.

Recycling information for France

Fig. 184 Recycling information for Owner's Manual

Fig. 185 Recycling information for electrical devices: vehicle keys, Audi connect key card, remote control for auxiliary heating/ventilation

Radio equipment

Information on UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017

Simplified UK declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 insofar as this is required by law. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo

UK CA

Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available online at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo CE

Frequency table

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Audi connect charging system	Wi-Fi: 2400 – 2480 MHz	20 dBm	32
	Wi-Fi: 5150 – 5250 MHz	<20 dBm	32
Audi phone box	LTE/NR FDD band 20: 832 – 862 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 8: 880 – 915 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 3: 1710 – 1785 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 1: 1920 – 1980 MHz	23dBm	37
	NR TDD band 78: 3300 – 3800 MHz	23dBm	37
Bluetooth	2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	10 dBm	25
Connectivity box/cGW/OCU	GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	33 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B28A: 703 MHz – 718 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD 32: 1452 MHz – 1496 MHz	-	29
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	30 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	24 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	24 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	24 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	23 dBm	29
Front radar 1	76-77 GHz	33 dBm (ARS510 background)	3
Remote control key	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	<10 mW E.R.P	13
	125 kHz	<22.7 dBµA/m @ 10m	13
	6 GHz – 8 GHz	< -41.3 dBm/MHz	13
Garage door opener	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	0.04 mW ERP	11
	868.00 MHz – 868.60 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11
	868.70 MHz – 869.20 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Interface for entry and start system	125 kHz	<22.7 dBµA/m @ 10m	13
Anti-theft protection module (RSAD)	6 GHz – 8 GHz	< -41.3 dBm/MHz	13
Radar 1 for surroundings	24.05-24.25 GHz	15.1 dBm (RS4)	36
Wireless charging	110 kHz -113 kHz	42 dBµA/m	37
Wi-Fi	2412 MHz – 2480 MHz	18 dBm	25
	5745 MHz – 5850 MHz	14 dBm	25
Central control unit	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	<10 mW ERP	4

Supplier table

Number	Address
3	Continental ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH Peter-Dornier-Str. 10 88131 Lindau Germany
4	Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstr. 12 93055 Regensburg Germany
11	Gentex Corp. 600 North Centennial Street Zeeland, MI 49464 USA
13	Hella KGaA. Hueck & Co. Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
25	Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH Am Technologiepark 1 42119 Wuppertal Germany
29	LG Electronics European Shared Service Center B.V. Krijgsman 1 1186 DM Amstelveen Netherlands
32	eSystems MTG GmbH Bahnhofstraße 100 73240 Wendlingen Germany
36	HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
37	Molex Technologies GmbH Mizarstraße 3 12529 Schönefeld Germany

Note

You can also find additional information e.g. product identifications online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

89A012720AM

Additional customer information

Fig. 186 Further customer information

① Singapore
② Russia
③ Belarus
④ United Kingdom (applies to products placed on the market from 01/01/2023 onwards)
⑤ Thailand
⑥ Republic of Korea
⑦ Taiwan

United Kingdom market

UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UK product regulations. The following acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands Milton Keynes, MK14 5AN United Kingdom

Türkiye

TELSİZ EKİPMANLARI YÖNETMELİĞİ (2014/53/AB)

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır. Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için telsiz ekipmanı ithalatçısı[1)]:

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş
Şekerpınar Mah. Anadolu Cad., No: 45 D , PK: 41420 Çayırova/Kocaeli ▶

[1)] Bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir.

Importer according to Article 12 of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED) on imported radio equipment and electronic devices:

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

Note

For some countries, further information and updates about radio equipment or product identifications for certain equipment versions can be found online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

89A012720AM

A

A/C cooling mode 86
ABS
see Anti-lock brake system 104
Accelerator 94
Accessories 301
Adaptive cruise assist 158
Cleaning sensors 278
Predictive control 165
Adaptive cruise control 158
see also Adaptive cruise assist 158
Airbag system 68
Deactivating front passenger's airbag 71
Air conditioner 85
Air conditioning when unlocking 90
Air distribution setting 87
Air recirculation mode 87
Alarm system
see Anti-theft alarm system 37
All-season tyres
see All-weather tyres 273
All-weather lights 50
All-weather tyres 273
Alpine roads 101
Android Auto
see Smartphone interface 251
Anti-dazzle interior mirror 55
Anti-freeze
Coolant 261
Windscreen washer system 268
Anti-lock brake system 104
Anti-theft alarm system 37
Anti-theft wheel bolts 286
App 211
Apple CarPlay
see Smartphone interface 251
Armrest (front centre) 62
ASR
see Traction control system 104
Assist function for driving off
see Hold assist 99
At home
see Home address 227
Audi adaptive light 50
Audi connect
see connect 208, 209
Audi connect remote & control 212
Audi drive select 102
Audi e-tron compact charging system 123
Activating/deactivating PE conductor monitoring 124
Changing/attaching mains cable 132
Hooking in 133
Limiting charging capacity 123
Status and fault indicators 124
Audio files 243
Audi online manuals 6
Audi phone box 199
Audi pre sense 174
Driver messages 177
Protective functions 174
Audi pre sense front 175
Audi virtual cockpit
see Instrument cluster 15
Augmented reality head-up display 27
AUTO
Automatic air conditioner 86
Automatic headlights 50
Auto Lock (central locking system) 33
Automatic gearbox 94
Automatic wash and wipe 56
Auxiliary air conditioner 89
Average consumption 17
Average speed 17
Axles loads 303

B

Background lighting 54
Bandages
see First-aid kit 283
Battery
Charging (12-volt vehicle battery) 267
High-voltage battery 107
Safety information 266
Vehicle battery (12-volt) 265
Winter conditions (12-volt vehicle battery) .265
Battery care function 117
Battery (mobile phone)
Charging via USB 199, 242
Wireless charging 200

Battery (vehicle)
see High-voltage battery 107
Battery, replacing
12-volt vehicle battery 265
Vehicle keys 39
Bicycle rack (trailer) 138
Blind
Sunroof 45
Blower 87
Bluetooth
Audio player 241
Connecting a device 255
Connecting a mobile phone 197
Deleting a device 256
Device overview 255
Disconnecting a device 255
Displaying profiles 256
Selecting a device 255
Setting a favourite 256
Bonnet 259
Boot
see Luggage compartment 79
Boot lid 40
Close button 41
General information 40
Opening/closing 41
Opening/closing electrically 41
Opening with foot gesture 42
Releasing manually 43
Brake fluid
Checking brake fluid level 263
Brakes 97
Brake fluid 263
Emergency braking function 100
Hot 101
New brake pads 97
Brightness, adjusting 54
Bulbs, changing 295
Business address 227

C

Call list 201
Cameras
Areas covered 143
Positions 145
Capacities 303
Caps for wheel bolts, removing 286
Car care
Washing/cleaning 277
Car keys 38
Car wash 277
Central locking switch 35
Central locking system 33
Auto Lock 33
Boot lid 41
Convenience key 39
Convenience open/close 45
Driver messages 35
Locking/unlocking doors manually 36
Remote control key 39
Settings 34
Vehicle key 39
Centre backrest, folding up/down 81
Centre display
see Multi Media Interface 21
Certificate of conformity 310
Certification 307, 310
Changing bulbs 295
Charging
see Power sources 78
Charging cable for domestic or industrial power outlets
see Audi e-tron compact charging system . 123
Charging cable for public charging stations . 122
Charging clip
see Clip wall mount 133
Charging flap, opening 113
Charging indicator 115
Charging mode 117
Charging system
see Audi e-tron compact charging system . 123
Charging target, setting 117
Charging terminals (battery) 261
Charging time 111
Charging window
see Preferred charging time 120
Chassis number
see Vehicle identification number 303
Chemicals 306

89A012720AM

Child lock
Electric windows 44
Rear air conditioner console 44
Rear doors 44
Child restraint system 71
Attaching with i-Size 75
Attaching with ISOFIX 75
Securing to top tether anchorage 76
Securing with seat belt 76
Cleaning 277
Cleaning/treating natural leather 280
Cleaning carbon parts 279, 280
Cleaning controls and displays 280
Cleaning fabrics 280
Cleaning leatherette 280
Cleaning microfibre 280
Cleaning plastic parts 280
Cleaning rubber seals 279
Clip wall mount 133
Clock 17
Closing
Blind (sunroof) 45
Bonnet 259
Boot lid 41
Boot lid with foot gesture 42
Convenience close 45
Panoramic sunroof 45
Power-operated boot lid 41
Windows 44
Coat hooks 79
Cockpit dimming 54
Compartments 79
Conference calling 203
connect 208
Data plans 213
Emergency call 215
Infotainment 209
Infotainment services 210
Online roadside assistance 217
Privacy 298
Vehicle control services 212
Connected devices 255
Connections
see Media 241, 243
Consumer information 300
Consumption
Reducing 96
Contacts
Importing/exporting 205
Updating in MMI 205
see also Directory 202
Convenience aux. A/C 90
Convenience key 33
Convenience close 45
see also Vehicle keys 38
Convenience open/close
Windows/panoramic sunroof 45
Cooling mode 86
Cooling system
Anti-freeze 261
Checking coolant level 262
Topping up coolant 262
Cornering light 50
Cup holders 78
Current consumption 17
Customer information regarding radio equipment 310

D

Data module
Serial number (IMEI) 204
Data plans 213
Data protection 298
Date 17
Setting 253
Daytime running lights 50
Deactivating front passenger's airbag 71
Declarations of conformity 307
Defrosting (windows) 87
Demo mode
see Presentation mode 231
Destination search 220
Destination, entering 220
From map 223
Device overview 255
Digital Owner's Manual 6
Dimensions 303
Dipped headlights 50
Directional tread (tyres) 288

Directory 202
Business card 202
Display
Cleaning 280
Distance covered 17
Distance warning 170
Distraction warning 152
Doors
Child lock 44
Courtesy lighting 54
Locking/unlocking manually 36
Door safelock 37
Downhill speed control 101
Driver assist menu 145
Driver availability detection 95
Driver information system 15
Drives
see Media 241, 243
Drive select
see Audi drive select 102
Drive system
Audi drive select 102
Driving abroad 213
Driving away 93
Driving off (assist function)
see Hold assist 99
Driving program 169
Driving school mode 306
Driving time 17
Driving tips
Driving efficiently 96
Driving through water 101
Hills and gradients 101
Dust filter
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 85

E

E-mail 206
EDL
see Electronic differential lock 104
EDR
see Event data recorder (EDR) 296
Efficiency assist 157
Predictive control 165
Efficiency assist menu 157
Electrical socket
see Power sources 78
Electrical system 264
Electric drive system 95
Electric motor
Coolant 261
Electric range 228
Electric windows 44
Malfunction 44
Electromechanical parking brake 99
Electronic differential lock 104
Electronic immobiliser 38
Electronic stabilisation control 104
Embedded SIM card 209
Emergency assist 180
Emergency braking function 100
Emergency call 204, 215
Emergency charging 115, 116
Emergency key 38
Emergency running 95
Energy
Current consumption 17
Energy recovery 95
Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 85
Entry/exit lights 52
Environmental tips
Leaks 259
ESC
see Electronic stabilisation control 104
ESC sport 105
eSIM
see Embedded SIM card 209
EU Directive 2014/53/EU 307
Event data recorder (EDR) 296
Exit warning 179
Exterior lighting 50
Exterior mirrors 55
External aerial 199
External voice control 29

F

Factory settings
Multi Media Interface 254
Fast charging 110
Fastening rings 82

89A012720AM

Fastest route 220
Fatigue warning 151
Favourites 23
Bluetooth 256
Navigation 222
Podcast 238
Radio 236
Telephone 201
File formats (media sources) 247
Finding entries
see Destination search 220
see Search function 236, 246
Fire extinguisher 283
First-aid kit 283
Flooded roads, tips for driving 101
Floor mat 60
Floor panel 83
Forward gear
see Transmission positions 94
Four-wheel drive
see quattro 104
Frequency band
see Waveband 234
Front cabin (overview) 9
Front collision warning 175
see also Audi pre sense front 174
Front compartment
Layout 261
Opening/closing bonnet 259
Safety information 258
Front lid
see Bonnet 259
Front window
see Windscreen 56
Functions on demand 211
Functions requiring a licence 211
see also Functions on demand 211
Fuses
Changing 293
Fuse list 294

G

Garage door opener 46
Glass heating 91
Glove box 79
Gradients, driving on 101
Gross vehicle weight 303

H

Handbrake
see Electromechanical parking brake 99
Handsfree 198
Hands Free Profile 198
Hazard alerts 231
Hazard warning lights 53
Head-up display
Adjusting brightness 54
How to use 27
Setting 27
Headlight range control 50
Headlights
Headlight range control 50
Washer system 56
Washer system (topping up washer fluid) . 268
Washing 278
Headlight washer system
Capacity 303
Head restraints, adjusting 64
Heated
Rear window 87
Seats 88
Heated steering wheel 89
Heating 85
HFP
see Hands Free Profile 197
High-visibility vest 283
High-voltage battery 107
Activating battery care function 117
Advanced charging settings 120
Audi e-tron compact charging system 123
Automatic release of charging connector . 119
Charge level display 15
Charging 110, 113
Charging cable for public charging stations 122
Charging equipment 120
Charging indicator on vehicle 115
Charging methods 110
Charging sockets on vehicle 110
Charging time 111
Connecting charging cable 113
Driver message when charging 116

Fast charging 110
Opening charging flap 113
Plug & Charge 119
Preferred charging time 120
Setting charging target 117
Setting timers 118
Transporting charging equipment 122
High-voltage system 107
Driver messages 109
Hazardous situations 109
Smell of smoke/gas 109
What to do if not using for a long time . . . 108
Hills, driving on 101
Hold assist 99
Home address 227
HomeLink
see Garage door opener 46
Home screen 20
Horn 9
Hotspot
see Wi-Fi 212

I

i-Size (attaching child restraint systems) 75
Ignition
Switching on/off 92
Immediate charging mode 117
Immobiliser
see Electronic immobiliser 38
Indicator lamps
see Warning lamps 10
Inflation pressures
Tyre pressure loss indicator 275
Tyres 272
Inspection intervals
see Service interval display 268
Instrument cluster 15
Changing views 16
Cleaning 280
Failure 15
Motor code 256
On-board computer 17
Operation 15
Selecting layout 16
Selecting tabs 15
Service interval display 268
Software information 256
Vehicle functions 17
Version information 256
Interior lights 54
Interior mirror 55
Interior monitor 37
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 56
Internet
see connect 208, 209
Internet radio
see Online radio 237, 238
iPhone
see USB ports with charging function 242
ISOFIX (attaching child restraint systems) . . . 75

J

Jack 287
Jump-starting 288
Jump-start terminals
see Charging terminals (battery) 261

K

Kerb weight 303
Key-operated switch for front passenger's air-bag 71
Keys 33, 38
Convenience open/close 45
Emergency key 38
Key replacement 38
Replacing battery 39
Safelock mechanism 37
Unlocking/locking 39
Key user 32
Kick-down 95

L

Lane assist
see Lane departure warning 163
see Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist) . 163
Lane change
Assisted 163
Lane departure warning 171
Cleaning area around camera 278
Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist) 163
Language, setting 253

89A012720AM

Leather, cleaning/treating 280
LED on vehicle charging socket
see Charging indicator 115
Left-hand traffic 52
Legal information
Licence periods 256
Software information 256
Software licences 256
Version information 256
Lights 50
Changing bulbs 295
Driving on right/left 52
Exterior 50
Interior 54
Light sensor/rain sensor
Headlights 50
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 56
Load guard 81
Local user 31
Locking/unlocking 33
By remote control 39
In the lock 36
With the central locking switch 35
With the convenience key 39
LTE
see External aerial 199
Luggage
Boot lid 40
Luggage compartment 79
Cover 80
Extending 81
Fastening rings 82
Power sources 78
Luggage net
see Stretch net 82
Luggage rack
see Roof carrier 83
Luggage shield
see Load guard 81
Lumbar support 61, 62

M

Mailbox 202
Main beam headlights
Main beam assist 51
Mains charging cable
Status and fault indicators 129
Maintenance 300
Maintenance intervals
see Service interval display 268
Make-up mirrors 56
Malfunction, electric windows 44
Manual operation
Boot lid 42, 43
Charging connector 116
Doors 36
Panoramic sunroof 46
Map
Changing scale 223
Display 225
How to use 224
Setting a destination 223
MAP
see Message Access Profile 205
Map preview 222
Map update 229
Online 229
USB connection 229
Matrix LED headlights 51
Matt paintwork, washing 277
Maximum speed 304
Measurement units, setting 253
Media 241, 243
Media centre 244
Media drives
Formats supported 247
Memory function 67
Memory list
see Favourites 236
Menu for driver assist 145
Menu for parking aid 146
Menu language
see Language, setting 253
Menu, efficiency assist 157
Message Access Profile 205
Messages 205
Mileage recorder 17
Resetting 17

Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors 55
Anti-dazzle setting 55
Make-up mirrors 56
MMI
see Multi Media Interface 21
Mobile phone
see Telephone 197
Mobile phone tray
see Audi phone box 199
Mobility tyre 272
Mode 3 charging cable
see Charging cable for public charging stations 122
Modifications 300
Motor
Power output 304
Motor braking effect
see Recuperation 95
Motor compartment
see Front compartment 258
Motorway light 50
Mountain passes 101
Multi-function steering wheel
Assigning function to button 30
Buttons 15, 30
Operation 15
Speech dialogue system 28
Multi Media Interface 21
Menus/symbols 22
Operation 19, 22
Switching on/off 21
Music
see Media 241, 243
Mute 30
myAudi 31, 210
myAudi navigation 219, 222
myAudi users 31

N

Navigation 219
Better route 230
Changing scale 223
Destination details 222
Destination search 220
Favourites 227
see also Map 224
Navigation database
Version information 256
Navigation (instrument cluster) 226
Neutral 99
see also Transmission positions 94
Notification centre 24
Number plate holder 301

O

Occupant detection (checking rear seats)
Setting the notification sound 36
Office address
see Business address 227
OFF (button) 86
On-board computer 17
Onboard diagnostic system (OBD) 296
Online map
see Satellite map 228
Online Owner's Manual 6
Online radio 237
Online roadside assistance 217
Online services
see connect 208, 209
Online traffic information 230
Opening 33
Blind (sunroof) 45
Bonnet 259
Boot lid 41
Boot lid with foot gesture 42
Convenience open 45
Panoramic sunroof 45
Power-operated boot lid 41
Windows 44
Opening/closing
see Unlocking/locking 33, 39
Operation
Head-up display 27
Instrument cluster 15
Multi-function steering wheel 15
Multi Media Interface 19, 22
Speech dialogue system 28
Text entry 25
Touch display 19

Options
Media 246
Radio 239
Outside noise 96
Overtake prevention 170
Overview diagram (front cabin) 9
Owner's Manual
Calling up digital manual 6

P

Paint damage 279
Panoramic sunroof 45
Closing manually 46
Convenience open/close 45
Park assist plus 193
Parking 93
Parking aid menu 146
Parking aids 182
Adjusting rear volume 183
Adjusting volume 185
Automatic activation 184
Cleaning sensors/camera 278
Finding a parking space 191
Park assist plus 193
Parking aid plus 184
Rear cross-traffic assist 190
Reversing camera 186
Surround view cameras 186
Trailer view 187
Parking and manoeuvring 182
Parking brake
see Electromechanical parking brake 99
Parking lights 51
Path descriptions 20
Pedals 94
Performance (motor) 304
Personal hotspot 209
Personal profiles
see Users 31
Phone book
see Directory 202
Picture format
Video 246
PIN
4-digit PIN 31
Protection 31
Playback
Media 243
Radio 235
Plug & Charge 119
Deleting contract details 120
Switching on/off 119
Troubleshooting 120
Podcast
see Online radio 237, 238
Polishing 279
Pollen filter
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 85
Power-operated boot lid 41, 42
Power meter 15, 17
Power sources 78, 242
Power steering
see Steering 103
Power unit 95
Running in 95
Switching off in an emergency 92
Switching on/off 92
Power unit start system 93
Predictive control 165
Predictive messages 158
Predictive route guidance 226
Predictive speed limiter 154
Preferred charging time 120
Pre sense
see Audi pre sense 174
Presentation mode 233
Progressive steering 103
Pyrotechnic components 300

Q

quattro 104
Selective wheel torque control 105

R

Radio 234
Radio text 237
Station list 234
Radio equipment 301, 307, 310
Radio Equipment Directive 307

Radio frequency
see Waveband 234
Radio transmitters 301
Rain sensor/light sensor
Headlights 50
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 56
Random playback 245
Range mode 96
Range (electric) 228
REACH (chemicals regulation) 306
Reading lights 54
Rear air conditioner console
Child lock 44
Rear cross-traffic assist 190
Rear fog light 50
Rear lights
Washing 278
Rear seats, checking
Setting the notification sound 36
Rear seats, folding down 81
Rear window heating 87
Recuperation 18, 95
Recuperation settings 95
Releasing charging connector manually 116
Reminder signal 200
Remote access rights (key user) 32
Remote control
Garage door opener 46
Remote control key 33, 38
Convenience open/close 45
Key replacement 38
LED 39
Replacing battery 39
Safelock mechanism 37
Unlocking/locking 39
see also Vehicle keys 38
Repair kit
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit) 284
Repairs 300
Replacement key 38
Replacement parts 301
Reverse gear
see Transmission positions 94
Reversing camera 186
Right-hand traffic 52
Rims 273
Washing 278
Rolling
Electromechanical parking brake 99
Hold assist 100
Neutral (N) 94
Rolling away 93
Roof
see Panoramic sunroof 45
Roof carrier 83
Roof load 303
Route guidance
Stopping 224
see also Navigation 219
Route planner (e-tron) 223
Running in
New brake pads 97
New tyres 270

S

Safelock mechanism 37
Satellite map 228
Scrappage 300
Screen
see Touch display 19
Search function
Media 246
Radio 236
Seat belts 64
Cleaning 280
Securing child restraint system 76
Seat heating 88
Seats
Adjusting 61, 62
Cleaning 280
Folding down 81
Head restraints 63
Memory function 67
Storing seat profile 67
Selector lever 94
Selector lever position
see Transmission positions 94
Self-help 283
Self-learning navigation
see Predictive route guidance 226

89A012720AM

Sensors
Areas covered 143
Positions 145
Service interval display 268
Service intervals
see Service interval display 268
Service Schedule (digital) 6
Settings 253
Announcements and sounds 253
Bluetooth 253
Date and time 253
Directory 204
E-mail 206
Language 253
Measurement units 253
Media 247
Navigation 231
Radio 239
Sound 253
System 253
Telephone 204
Text message 205
Time zone 253
Wi-Fi 212
Wi-Fi hotspot 212
Setup wizard 21
Shop 211
Shuffle
see Random playback 245
Side assist 177
Cleaning sensors 278
Side lights 50
SIM card 209
Smartphone
see Telephone 197
Smartphone interface 251
Legal information 256
Snow chains 274
Software information
Legal information 256
Software update 254
Software version (MMI)
Version information 256
Sound adjustment 253
Source, selecting
Media 243
Radio 235
Speech dialogue system 28
How to use 28
Speed display (driving school vehicles) 306
Speed limit display
see Traffic sign recognition 147
Speed limits
see Traffic sign recognition 147
Speedometer 15
Speed regulation systems
Cruise control 154
Speed limiter 154
Speed warning 147
Starting with jump leads 288
Station memory
see Favourites 236
Steering 103
Audi drive select 102
Steering wheel
Adjustment 63
Manual adjustment 63
Steering wheel heating 89
see also Multi-function steering wheel 15
Stopover (navigation) 223
Stopping vehicle 93
Storage compartments 79
Stretch net 82
Sunroof
see Panoramic sunroof 45
Sun visors 56
Surround view cameras 186
Suspension 102
Audi drive select 102
Suspension control 102
Swerve assist 176
Switching between calls 203
Symbols
Charging equipment 120
Media 245
Navigation 224
Radio 235, 236
see also Warning lamps 10
SYNC (button) 87
System settings 253

T

Tailgate
see Boot lid 41
Technical data 303
Telephone 197
Answering/ending calls 203
Audi phone box 199
Charging battery (USB) 199
Connecting a mobile phone 197
Connecting a second phone 198
Dialling a number 203
Disconnecting a mobile phone 199
External aerial 199
Options during a call 203
Playing music 241
Reminder signal 200
Wireless charging 200
Temperature display
Outside temperature 17
Temperature setting 86
Temperature, adjusting 87
Tethering 209
see also Wi-Fi 212
Text entry 25
Text message 205
Themes 250
Throttle
see Accelerator 94
Tightening torque (wheel bolts) 288
Timer charging mode 117
Timers (high-voltage battery) 118
Time, setting 253
Tone (sound)
see Sound adjustment 253
Tools 284
Top tether anchorage (securing a child restraint system) 76
Torque
Motor 304
Wheel bolts 288
Touch display
Adjusting brightness 21
Operation 19
Tow-away protection 37
Towing 134
Draw bar weight 134
Rear carrier systems 138
Swivelling towing bracket 136
Towing bracket with square tube 140
Trailer stabilisation 137
Trailer weight 134, 304
Towing away 290
Towline anchorage 291, 292
TPMS
Tyre pressure loss indicator 275
Traction control system 104
Trademarks 306
Traffic information 229
Online traffic information 230
Traffic light information 149
Traffic sign recognition 147
Traffic signs 151
Trailer view 187
Transmission positions 94
Transporting charging equipment 122
Turn assist 176
Turning light 50
Turn signal display (driving school vehicles) . 306
Turn signals 51
Type plate 303
Tyre repair kit 284
Tyres 270, 284
Changing 286
Directional tread 288
Inflation pressure 272
Lettering 270
Load index 270
Low-profile tyres 274
Manufacturing date 270
Mobility tyre 272
Service life 271
Speed rating 270
Tyre pressure loss indicator 275
Tyre pressure (towing a trailer) 134
Wear indicator 271

89A012720AM

U

Unlocking/locking
- By remote control 39
- In the lock 36
- With the convenience key 39

Usage tips, displaying 21
USB adapters 242
USB input 78
USB ports with charging function 242
USB stick
- Types/formats supported 247
- *see also* USB ports with charging function . 242

Users
- Local user 31
- myAudi users 31

Using another vehicle to jump-start 288

V

Vehicle
- Dimensions 303
- Identification data 303
- Raising 287
- Securing 93
- Starting 92
- Stopping 93
- Taking out of service 282
- Unlocking/locking 39

Vehicle control services 212
- *see also* Audi connect remote & control . . 212

Vehicle identification number 303
Vehicle keys 33, 38
Vehicle sound 96
Ventilation 85
VIEW button 15
VIN
- *see* Vehicle identification number 303

Voice control function
- External 29

Volume of announcements, setting 253
Volume, adjusting 30

W

Warning lamps 10
Warning triangle 283
Washing 277
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings 279
Waveband 234
Waxing 279
Weights 303
Wheel bolts 273
- Changing wheel(s) 286
- Torque 288

Wheel covers, removing 286
Wheel imbalance 271
Wheels 270
- Changing 286
- Tyre pressure loss indicator 275
- Washing 278

Wi-Fi 212
- Settings 212
- Using hotspot 209

Wi-Fi network 209
Wi-Fi tethering 209
Window blind
- *see* Panoramic sunroof 45

Windows
- Child lock 44
- Cleaning/de-icing 279
- Convenience open/close 45
- Electric windows 44
- Opening/closing 44

Windows (defrosting) 87
Windscreen
- Washing 56

Windscreen washer system 56, 268
- Capacity 303

Windscreen wipers 56
Winter conditions
- Auxiliary air conditioner 89
- Cooling system 261
- De-icing windows 279
- Defrosting windows 87
- Rear window heating 87
- Seat heating 88
- Snow chains 274
- Steering wheel heating 89
- Tyres 273
- Vehicle battery (12-volt) 265
- Washing the vehicle 277
- Windscreen washer system 268

Winter tyres 273

Wiper blades (front)
Changing 58
Cleaning 58
Wiper blade (rear)
Changing 58
Cleaning 58
Wireless Android Auto
see Smartphone interface 251
Wireless Apple CarPlay
see Smartphone interface 251
Wireless charging 200
Work
see Business address 227

89A012720AM